

SOUTH AFRICA



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

Ninth edition

Published by Government Communications (GCIS)

Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001, South Africa

Tel: +27 12 314 2911

Fax: +27 12 323 0557

Website: www.gcis.gov.za

ISBN: 978-0-621-40472-2

Managing editor: Nina Bhaktawar

Editor: Delien Burger

Assistant editors: Antonia Vermeulen and Jacky Hefez

Editorial support: Elias Tibane

Picture researchers: Elizabeth Mpila and Ongezwa Manyathi

Photographs supplied by: Africa Media Online; Delien Burger;

Department of International Relations and Cooperation; Este

Koorts; GCIS Photo Studio; Graeme Williams; Maik Wolleben;

Mediaclub South Africa; Nicolette Prinsloo; Picturenent

Cover design: Rachel Moloi

Design and layout: Rachel Moloi

Printed and bound in South Africa by Paarl Media

The *Pocket Guide to South Africa* is compiled and edited by the GCIS. The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring confirmation of any data in the *Pocket Guide to South Africa*, or more detailed and specific information, should consult the relevant department/institution. The information is also available on *Government Online* (www.gov.za)

Unless otherwise specified, information contained in this Pocket Guide was the latest available as at October 2011.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

Contents

Foreword by President Jacob Zuma	iii
South Africa at a glance	v
History	1
South Africa's people	9
Government	15
Provinces	29
Economy	39
Finance	51
Doing business in South Africa	63
International relations and cooperation	71
Communications	83
Transport	95
Agriculture, forestry and fisheries	107
Rural development	119
Mineral resources	129
Energy and water	137
Education	151
Science and technology	159
Human settlements	171
Police, defence and intelligence	177
Justice and correctional services	187
Social development	199
Environment	209
Arts and culture	221
Tourism	233
Health	249
Sport and recreation	257
Reading list	269



FOREWORD

As President of the Republic of South Africa, I am pleased to present the *Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12*.

We look back with pride on 2011 as an industrious year, which we declared as the Year of Job Creation and during which we started implementing our plans to fight the triple challenge of poverty, unemployment and inequality in a difficult economic climate.

This provided fresh focus for a nation that had been energised and inspired by the success of the first African FIFA World Cup a year earlier in 2010.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

FOREWORD

In the Year of Job Creation, employment unfolded in the public and private sectors through large-scale developments such as electricity plants, rail and road upgrades and water management that will sustain thousands of jobs and push our economy onto a higher trajectory of growth. We also formed various strategic partnerships to give further impetus and drive to our key imperatives.

The year 2011 was also the year in which we marked 21 years since the release from prison of our beloved founding President, Nelson Mandela. The date 11 February 1990 was a momentous, special moment for our country, our continent and the international community, marking our victory over the repugnant system of apartheid.

This *Pocket Guide* contains powerful evidence of the progress we have sustained since our political transformation. It also shows how our programme of economic transformation is producing results that are changing the lives of ordinary people and making South Africa a better place in which to live and work and an attractive destination for investment, trade and tourism.

You will discover in this volume the strides we are making in national priority areas such as education and skills, health, rural development and land reform, creating decent work and fighting crime and corruption.

Above all, you will discover that we are a dynamic, energetic and proud nation whose achievements in 2011 create further hope and inspiration for achieving the goals we have set for our future.

Our goal is clear. We want to have a country where millions more South Africans have decent employment opportunities, which has a modern infrastructure, a vibrant economy and where the quality of life is high. This *Pocket Guide* illustrates how we are getting there.

We are indeed writing a new story about South Africa and you are holding part of that story in your hand.

I hope the *Pocket Guide* will inspire and impress you to be or become a champion for building an even better South Africa.



JG Zuma
President of South Africa
April 2012



SOUTH AFRICA AT A GLANCE

Land surface area

1 219 090 km²

Key economic sectors

Mining services and transport, energy, manufacturing, tourism and agriculture.

Population

Total	50 586 757
Male	24 515 036
Female	26 071 721

Official languages

English, isiZulu, isiXhosa, isiNdebele, Afrikaans, siSwati, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Government

Constitutional multiparty democracy, three spheres (local, provincial and national).

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

SOUTH AFRICA AT A GLANCE

Capitals

Pretoria (administrative); Cape Town (legislative); Bloemfontein (judicial). The Constitutional Court is located in Johannesburg.

Currency

Rand (ZAR) – 100 cents equals one rand.

Time

GMT +2 hours

Provinces

Eastern Cape, Free State, Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West, Western Cape.

Transportation

Excellent roads, rail and air facilities (both domestic and international). Public transport in major cities include the Gautrain between Johannesburg and Pretoria and the Bus Rapid Transport System in Cape Town, Johannesburg and Pretoria.

Telecommunications

World-class infrastructure. Internet access is widely available. There are four mobile (cellular) networks.

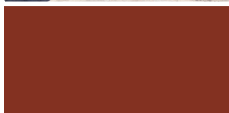
Health

Top-quality care is available throughout the country, although basic in rural areas. Inoculations are only required for those travelling from yellow-fever areas. Malaria precautions are necessary in some areas.

Source: *Millennium Development Goals Country Report 2010*
Mid-year Population Estimates, 2011 (Stats SA)

For further information on South Africa, visit
www.southafrica.info and www.gov.za

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



HISTORY

HISTORY

Modern humans have lived in what is today South Africa for over 100 000 years, and their ancestors for some 3,3 million years.

Some 2 000 years ago, the Khoekhoen (the Hottentots of early European terminology) were pastoralists who had settled mostly along the coast, while the San (the Bushmen) were hunter-gatherers spread across the region. At this time, Bantu-speaking agro-pastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, spreading from the eastern lowlands to the Highveld.

At several archaeological sites there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures.

European contact

The first European settlement in southern Africa was established by the Dutch East India Company in Table Bay (Cape Town) in 1652. Created to supply passing ships, the colony grew quickly as Dutch farmers settled to grow produce. Shortly after the establishment of the colony, slaves were imported from East Africa, Madagascar and the East Indies.

Conflict

From the 1770s, colonists came into contact and inevitable conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms some 800 km east of Cape Town. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms.

In the 1820s, the celebrated Zulu leader, Shaka, established sway over a vast area of south-east Africa.

As splinter groups from Shaka's Zulu nation conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the region experienced a fundamental disruption. Substantial states, such as Moshoe-shoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms were established, partly for reasons of defence.

This temporary disruption of life on the Highveld served to facilitate the expansion northwards of the original Dutch settlers' descendants, the Boer Voortrekkers, from the 1830s.

Occupation

In 1806, Britain reoccupied the Cape. As the colony prospered, the political rights of the various races were guaranteed, with slavery being abolished in 1838.

Throughout the 1800s, the boundaries of European influence spread eastwards. From the port of Durban, Natal

settlers pushed northwards, further and further into the land of the Zulu.

From the mid-1800s, the Voortrekkers coalesced in two land-locked white-ruled republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

The mineral revolution

The discovery of diamonds north of the Cape in the 1860s brought tens of thousands of people to the area around Kimberley.

In 1871, Britain annexed the diamond fields. Independent African chiefdoms were subjugated and incorporated.

Gold

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants working on the new goldfields was the pretext Britain used to go to war with the Transvaal and Orange Free State in 1899.

The Boers initially inflicted some heavy defeats on the British but eventually the might of imperial Britain proved too strong for the guerilla bands and the war ended in 1902. Britain's scorched-earth policy included farm burnings and the setting up of concentration camps for non-combatants in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died.

The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in racially segregated camps has only recently been acknowledged in historical accounts of the war.

Union and opposition

In 1910, the Union of South Africa was created out of the Cape, Natal, Transvaal and Free State. It was to be essentially a white union.

Black opposition was inevitable, and the African National Congress (ANC) was founded in 1912 to protest the exclusion of black people from power. In 1921, the Communist Party came into being at a time of heightened militancy.

More discriminatory legislation was enacted. Meanwhile, Afrikaner nationalism, fuelled by job losses arising from a worldwide recession, was on the march.

The rise of apartheid

In 1948, the pro-Afrikaner National Party (NP) came to power with the ideology of apartheid, an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the previous segregationist policies.

While white South Africa was cementing its power, black opposition politics were evolving. In 1943, a younger, more determined political grouping came to the fore with the launch of the ANC Youth League, a development which was to foster the leadership of figures such as Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu.

Repression

In 1961, the NP Government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic after winning a whites-only referendum.

A new concern with racial purity was apparent in various legislation and residential segregation was enforced.

Separate development

At a time when much of Africa was on the verge of independence, the South African Government was devising its policy of separate development, dividing the African population into artificial ethnic “nations”, each with its own “homeland” and the prospect of “independence”.

Forced removals from “white” areas affected some 3,5 million people, and vast rural slums were created in the homelands.

In 1949, the ANC adopted its Programme of Action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s.

The programme embodied a rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations.

Defiance

The Defiance Campaign of the early 1950s carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Kliptown Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism.

Soon the mass-based organisations, including the ANC and the Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), were banned. Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960 when 69 PAC anti-pass demonstrators were killed. A state of emergency was imposed, and detention without trial was introduced.

Struggle days

Leaders of the black political organisations at this time either went into exile or were arrested. In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle.

Top leaders still inside the country, including members of the ANC's newly formed military wing, Umkhonto we Sizwe (Spear of the Nation), were arrested in 1963. At the Rivonia Trial, eight ANC leaders, including Nelson Mandela, convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge), were sentenced to life imprisonment.

The resurgence of resistance politics in the early 1970s was dramatic. The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. On 16 June 1976, school pupils in Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Strong, legal vehicles for the democratic forces tested the State, whose response until then had been invariably heavy-handed repression.

Reform

Shaken by the scale of protest and opposition, the Government embarked on a series of limited reforms in the early 1980s.

In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament.

In 1986, the pass laws were scrapped. The international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause.

Mass resistance increasingly challenged the apartheid State, which resorted to intensified repression accompanied by eventual recognition that apartheid could not be sustained.

Apartheid's last days

In February 1990, President FW de Klerk announced the unbanning of the liberation movements and the release of political prisoners, notably Nelson Mandela.

Democracy at last

After a difficult negotiation process, South Africa held its first democratic election in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The ANC emerged with a 62% majority. South Africa was divided into nine new provinces in place of the four provinces and 10 homelands that existed previously. In terms of the interim Constitution, the NP and Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) participated in a government of national unity under President Mandela, South Africa's first democratically elected President.

The ANC-led Government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

The second democratic election, in 1999, saw the ANC increasing its majority to a point just short of two thirds of the total vote.

In the election in April 2004, the ANC won the national vote with 69,68%. 27 April 2004 saw the swearing in of President Thabo Mbeki and the celebration of 10 Years of Freedom attended by heads of state and government delegations from across the world.

In 2008, Kgalema Motlanthe became President following the ANC's recalling of President Mbeki.

South Africa held national and provincial elections on 22 April 2009. About 76% of registered voters took part in the election. The results for the top five parties were as follows: the ANC achieved 65,9%; the Democratic Alliance 16,6%; the newly-formed Congress of the People 7,4%; the IFP 4,5%; and the Independent Democrats 0,9% of the votes cast. Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009.

A significant milestone was the hosting of the 2010 FIFA Soccer World Cup™. The event will leave a lasting legacy, not just for South Africa but for Africa as a whole.

Municipal elections were held in South Africa on 18 May 2011, electing new councils for all municipalities in the country.

During October 2011, Statistics South Africa conducted a national Census.

South Africa has continued to build on its international profile. On 1 January 2011, South Africa began its second term as a non-permanent member of the United Nations Security Council for the period 2011 and 2012. South Africa serves

alongside the permanent five members, China, France, the Russian Federation, United Kingdom and the United States of America and elected members Bosnia and Herzegovina, Brazil, Colombia, Gabon, Germany, India, Lebanon, Nigeria and Portugal.

South Africa, in the conduct of its international relations, is committed to garner support for its domestic priorities, promote the interests of the African continent, enhance democracy and human rights, uphold justice and international law in relations between nations, seek the peaceful resolution of conflicts and promote economic development through regional and international co-operation in an interdependent world.

On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa and the continent.



POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



SOUTH AFRICA'S PEOPLE

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

SOUTH AFRICA'S PEOPLE

People

South Africa's biggest asset is its people; a rainbow nation with rich and diverse cultures. South Africa is often called the cradle of humankind, for this is where archaeologists discovered 2,5-million-year-old fossils of our earliest ancestors, as well as 100 000-year-old remains of modern man. According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*, released in July 2011, there were 50,59 million people living in South Africa, of whom 79,5% were African, 9% coloured, 2,5% Indian and 9% white. Approximately 52% of the population was female.

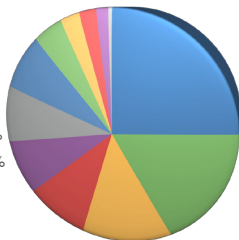
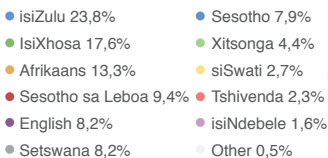
Nearly one third (31,3%) of the population was aged younger than 15 years and approximately 7,7% (3,9 million) was 60 years or older. Of those younger than 15 years, approximately 23% (3,66 million) lived in KwaZulu-Natal and 19,4% (3,07 million) lived in Gauteng.

The South African population consists of the Nguni (comprising the Zulu, Xhosa, Ndebele and Swazi people); Sotho-Tswana, who include the Southern, Northern and Western Sotho (Tswana people); Tsonga; Venda; Afrikaners; English; coloured people; Indian people; and those who have immigrated to South Africa from the rest of Africa, Europe and Asia and who maintain a strong cultural identity. Members of the Khoi and the San also live in South Africa.

Languages

According to the Constitution of South Africa, 1996, everyone has the right to use the language and participate in the cultural life of their choice, but no one may do so in a manner that is inconsistent with any provision of the Bill of Rights. Each

Languages



Source: Census 2001

Estimates by population group and gender

Population group	Male		Female		Total	
	Number	% of total population	Number	% of total population	Number	% of total population
African	19 472 038	79,4	20 734 237	79,5	40 206 275	79,5
Coloured	2 188 782	8,9	2 351 008	9	4 539 290	9
Indian/Asian	626 690	2,6	648 177	2,5	1 274 867	2,5
White	2 227 526	9,1	2 338 721	9	4 565 825	9
Total	24 515 036	100	26 071 721	100	50 586 757	100

Source: Statistics South Africa, *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011*

person also has the right to instruction in his or her language of choice where this is reasonably practicable.

Official languages

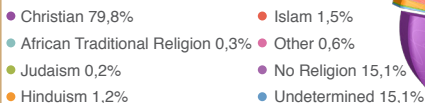
The diversity of the unique cultures of South Africa means that there are 11 official languages.

These are English, Afrikaans, isiXhosa, isiZulu, isiNdebele, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, siSwati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga. The Constitution also requires the Pan South African Language Board to promote the use of the Khoi, Nama and San languages, and Sign Language.

Although English is the mother tongue of only 8,2% of the population, it is the language most widely understood, and the second language of the majority of South Africans.

However, government is committed to promoting all the official languages.

Religious affiliation



Source: Census 2001

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

SOUTH AFRICA'S PEOPLE

Religion

According to the Constitution, everyone has the right to freedom of conscience, religion, thought, belief and opinion. Almost 80% of South Africa's population follows the Christian faith. Other major religious groups are the Hindus,

Number of individuals by church	
Churches	Number
Dutch Reformed	3 005 698
Zion Christian	4 971 932
Roman Catholic	3 181 336
Methodist	3 305 404
Pentecostal/Charismatic	3 422 749
Anglican	1 722 076
Apostolic Faith Mission	246 190
Lutheran	1 130 987
Presbyterian	832 495
Bandla Lama Nazaretha	248 824
Baptist	691 237
Congregational	508 825
Orthodox	42 251
Other Apostolic churches	5 609 070
Other Zionist churches	1 887 147
Ethiopian type churches	880 414
Other Reformed churches	226 495
Other African independent churches	656 644
Other Christian churches	3 195 477
African Traditional Belief	125 903
Judaism	75 555
Hinduism	551 669
Islam	654 064
Other beliefs	269 200
No religion	6 767 165
Undetermined	610 971
Total	44 819 778

Source: Statistics South Africa (*Census 2001*)

POCKET GUIDE

Muslims, Jews and Buddhists. A minority of South Africa's population do not belong to any of the major religions, but regard themselves as traditionalists of no specific religious affiliation.



POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



GOVERNMENT SYSTEMS

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12 **GOVERNMENT SYSTEMS**

The South African Government is committed to building a free, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic and united South Africa.

Government's outcomes approach to achieve its objectives is embedded in and a direct result of the electoral mandate.

Five priority areas were identified: decent work and sustainable livelihoods; education; health; rural development, food security and land reform; and the fight against crime and corruption. These translated into 12 outcomes to create a better life for all:

- better quality basic education
- a long and healthy life for all South Africans
- all South Africans should be safe and feel safe
- decent employment through inclusive growth
- a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path
- an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network
- vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all
- sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life
- a responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system
- environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and enhanced
- a better Africa and a better world as a result of South Africa's contributions to global relations
- an efficient and development-oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

President Jacob Zuma and Cabinet ministers signed performance agreements based on the outcomes and targets.

The service-delivery agreements and plans for realising them are available on the Government and Presidency websites (www.gov.za and www.thepresidency.gov.za). The outcomes are reviewed by Cabinet and open to public scrutiny, as part of government's commitment to the people of South Africa to be transparent and accountable for service delivery.

The Presidency, June 2012

President: Jacob Zuma

Deputy President: Kgalema Motlanthe

The Constitution

South Africa's Constitution is one of the most progressive in the world and enjoys high acclaim internationally. Human rights are given clear prominence in the Constitution.

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land.

The Preamble to the Constitution states that its aims are to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres. The powers of the legislature, executive and courts are separate.

Parliament

Parliament consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public. Several measures have been implemented to make Parliament more accessible and accountable. The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members, elected through a system of proportional representation for a five-year term. It elects the President and scrutinises the executive.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates, and aims to represent provincial interests in the national sphere of government.

The Presidency

The President is the head of state and leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the National Assembly from among its members, and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12 GOVERNMENT SYSTEMS

The Presidential Hotline, which was introduced in September 2009, enables citizens to escalate their queries and suggestions to the President's Office.



By February 2012, the hotline had received 111 751 valid queries. Of these, 84 700 were attended to and resolved.

The contact details are telephone: 17737, fax: 086 681 0987 and e-mail: president@po.gov.za. The service is toll-free.

There are two ministers in The Presidency, one responsible for the National Planning Commission (NPC) and the other for Performance Monitoring and Evaluation as well as Administration.

The NPC is responsible for strategic planning for the country to ensure one national plan to which all spheres of government would adhere.

The *National Development Plan: Vision for 2030* was released in October 2011. It focuses on the following strategic areas of development:

- creating jobs
- expanding infrastructure
- sustainable use of resources
- transforming urban and rural spaces
- improving education and training
- providing quality healthcare
- building a capable state
- fighting corruption
- uniting the nation.

A monitoring and evaluation competency in The Presidency was created to monitor and evaluate the performance of government in all three spheres.

Achievements of the Department of Performance Monitoring and Evaluation as well as Administration included the following:

- developing a position paper to guide government in implementing the outcomes approach
- developing an implementation guide to translate the *Green Paper on National Strategic Planning* into action
- signing performance agreements between the President and ministers
- finalising delivery agreements between key stakeholders on achieving the outcomes
- initialising the terms of reference and guide for outcome implementation forums

Premiers, as at June 2012	
Province	Premier
Eastern Cape	Noxolo Kiviet
Free State	Sekgobelo Elias Magashule
Gauteng	Nomvula Mokonyane
KwaZulu-Natal	Dr Zweli Mkhize
Limpopo	Cassel Mathale
Mpumalanga	David Mabuza
Northern Cape	Hazel Jenkins
North West	Thandi Modise
Western Cape	Helen Zille

- developing a management-performance assessment tool to enable objective performance assessments of departments and municipalities by involving departments and bodies across the sphere of government to deliver input
- improving frontline service delivery, where the public interfaces with government.

The Deputy President

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly.

Cabinet

Cabinet consists of the President, as head of the Cabinet, the Deputy President and ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President and ministers, assigns their powers and functions and may dismiss them. No more than two ministers may be appointed from outside the National Assembly.

Provincial government

Each of the nine provinces has its own legislature of 30 to 80 members. They elect the premiers, who head the executive councils.

Provinces may have legislative and executive powers concurrently with the national sphere, over:

- agriculture
- casinos, horse racing and gambling
- cultural affairs

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

GOVERNMENT SYSTEMS

- education at all levels, except university and university of technology education
- environment and nature conservation
- health, housing and welfare
- language policy
- police services, public transport, traffic regulation and vehicle licensing
- regional planning and development and urban and rural development.

Provinces are also responsible for promoting trade, investment and tourism.

They have exclusive competency over:

- abattoirs
- ambulance services
- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters
- provincial recreation
- provincial roads and traffic.

Traditional leadership

Chapter 11 of the Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised, subject to the Constitution.

Government remains committed to strengthening the institution of traditional leadership and appreciates the role it plays in society.

The Department of Traditional Affairs was established in April 2010 to underline the critical focus on traditional leadership.

The department is working on a range of policies which, among other things, include unity and diversity, initiation, traditional healing, traditional leaders' protocol, family trees, involving the Khoisan people in the system of governance in South Africa, and the remuneration and benefits of traditional leaders based on uniform norms and standards.

Local government

Local governments are not merely instruments of service delivery, but are expected to act as key agents for economic development.

Cabinet ministers and deputy ministers, as at June 2012

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries	Tina Joemat-Pettersson	Pieter Mulder
Arts and Culture	Paul Mashatile	Dr Joe Phaahla
Basic Education	Angie Motshekga	Enver Surty
Communications	Dina Pule	Stella Ndabeni
Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	Richard Baloyi	Yunus Carrim
Correctional Services	Sibusiso Ndebele	Ngoako Ramatlhodi
Defence and Military Veterans	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Thabang Makwetla
Economic Development	Ebrahim Patel	Hlengiwe Mkhize
Energy	Dipuo Peters	Barbara Thompson
Finance	Pravin Gordhan	Nhlanhla Nene
Health	Aaron Motsoaledi	Gwen Ramokgopa
Higher Education and Training	Blade Nzimande	Mduduzi Manana
Home Affairs	Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma	Fatima Chohan
Human Settlements	Tokyo Sexwale	Zoliswa Kota-Fredericks
International Relations and Cooperation	Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	Marius Fransman Ebrahim Ebrahim
Justice and Constitutional Development	Jeff Radebe	Andries Nel
Labour	Mildred Oliphant	-
Mineral Resources	Susan Shabangu	Godfrey Oliphant
Police	Nathi Mthethwa	Makhotso Sotyu
Public Enterprises	Malusi Gigaba	Gratitude Magwanishe
Public Service and Administration	Lindiwe Sisulu	Ayanda Dlodlo
Public Works	Thembelani Nxesi	Jeremy Cronin
Rural Development and Land Reform	Gugile Nkwinti	Solomon Tsenoli

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

GOVERNMENT SYSTEMS

Cabinet ministers and deputy ministers, as at June 2012

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Science and Technology	Naledi Pandor	Derek Hanekom
Social Development	Bathabile Dlamini	Maria Ntuli
Sport and Recreation	Fikile Mbalula	Gert Oosthuizen
State Security	Siyabonga Cwele	-
The Presidency National Planning Commission	Trevor Manuel	-
The Presidency Performance Monitoring and Evaluation and Administration	Collins Chabane	Obed Bapela
Tourism	Marthinus van Schalkwyk	Thokozile Xasa
Trade and Industry	Rob Davies	Elizabeth Thabethe Thandi Tobias-Pokolo
Transport	Benedict Martins	Sindisiwe Chikunga
Water and Environmental Affairs	Edna Molewa	Rejoice Mabudafhasi
Women, Children and People with Disabilities	Lulu Xingwana	Hendrietta Bogopane- Zulu

Municipalities

There are 278 municipalities in South Africa, comprising eight metropolitan, 44 district and 226 local municipalities. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and services.

South Africa's eight metropolitan municipalities are:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekweni (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Municipalities enjoy significant powers to corporatise their services. Legislation provides for them to report on their

A key programme of the Local Government Turnaround Strategy is Operation Clean Audit 2014. Its main purpose is to address challenges faced by municipalities and provinces in managing audits, especially audit findings and queries from the Auditor-General. The campaign seeks to achieve clean audits in municipalities and provincial government departments by 2014.

In 2004/05, 61 municipalities received financially unqualified audits. This figure increased to 94 in 2007/08, 117 in 2008/09 and 127 in 2009/10.



performance, and for residents to compare this performance with that of other municipalities.

Local Government Turnaround Strategy (LGTAS)

In December 2009, Cabinet approved the LGTAS. This is expected to ensure that local government has the correct management, administrative and technical skills.

The aims of the LGTAS are to:

- restore the confidence of the majority of South Africans in municipalities as the primary delivery organ of the developmental state at local level.
- rebuild and improve the basic requirements for a functional, responsive, accountable, effective and efficient developmental local government.

By December 2011, 90% of municipalities had developed their own turnaround strategies, which had been incorporated into their integrated development plans. These turnaround strategies assess the root causes of poor financial management and service delivery within municipalities and identify appropriate measures to improve performance.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)

The Department of Cooperative Governance is responsible for managing and transferring the MIG and provides support to provinces and municipalities in implementing the MIG. This conditional grant aims to accelerate the eradication of basic services backlogs in poor communities. Allocations for the MIG increases from R7,2 billion in 2008/09 to R15,8 billion in 2014/15, at an average annual rate of 14,6%. In 2011/12, 1,8 million people were provided with access to water services and 1,3 million given access to sanitation services. In terms of community infrastructure, 1,3 million households

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12 **GOVERNMENT SYSTEMS**

were reached through the extension of road access and 616 186 households benefited from community lighting.

Between 2008/09 and 2011/12, R43,3 billion was spent through the MIG on basic services infrastructure.

Over this period, an additional 7,25 million people were given access to water services, while 5,87 million received access to sanitation services.

Communicating with the people

The Government Communication and Information System (GCIS) is primarily responsible for facilitating communication between government and citizens. A high premium is placed on communication that emphasises direct dialogue, especially with people in disadvantaged areas.

GCIS has three branches: Communication and Content Management, Corporate Services, and Government and Stakeholder Engagement.

The GCIS is responsible for maintaining government's website (www.gov.za), which includes both an information portal for general information about government and a services portal that is a source of information about all the services offered by national government.

The GCIS leads or is involved in various communication partnerships. Provincial and Local Liaison provides development communication and extends government's information infrastructure through partnerships with provincial and local government. It coordinates government's Thusong Service Centre Programme. By February 2012, there were 171 such centres. They aim to bring government services closer to the people.

The GCIS publishes, among other things, the *South African Yearbook*, the *Pocket Guide to South Africa*, *Vuk'uzenzele* and *Public Sector Manager* magazine. It is also responsible for the government news agency BuaNews.

The Media Development and Diversity Agency reports to the GCIS.

The toll-free, 24-hour National Public Service Anti-Corruption Hotline facility (0800 701 701) was established for the reporting of fraud and corruption.



Brand South Africa

In 2011, the International Marketing Council of South Africa changed its name to Brand South Africa to shift the focus to its core mandate, which is to strengthen, promote and market the South African brand's image to international audiences.



As the custodian of the brand, Brand South Africa does this through collaboration with partners in government, private sector and civil society; working together to market the country.

Brand South Africa reports to The Presidency.

The Public Service

By the end of October 2011, the Public Service had nearly 1,3 million people in its employ (including members of the South African National Defence Force). National government employed 391 922 people and the nine provincial governments 891 430 people.

The Department of Public Service and Administration is mandated to foster good governance and sound administration in the Public Service.

Batho Pele remains government's leading campaign to achieve the desired crucial transformation of the hearts and minds of public servants. This is a public-service culture reorientation programme that is aimed at aligning the behaviour and attitudes of public servants towards the practice of Batho Pele ethos.

The department has identified the following 10 key priorities over the medium term:

- service-delivery quality and access
- effective systems, structures and processes
- leveraging information and communications technology as a strategic resource
- effective employment entry into public service and human-resource development cadre development

On 27 April 2012, Freedom Day, at a ceremony at the Presidential Guest House in Pretoria, President Jacob Zuma bestowed national orders, the country's highest civilian honour, on 31 recipients for outstanding achievements and contributions to freedom and development in South Africa.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

GOVERNMENT SYSTEMS

The Department of Home Affairs-South African Banking Risk Identification Centre (Sabric) Online Fingerprint Verification System was launched in November 2011.



Sabric and the department entered into a cooperation agreement in 2007 to jointly address bank-related identity fraud. In terms of the initiative, the department will allow banks access to the Home Affairs National Identification System to enable the biometric identification of current and prospective clients. This will assist banks in curbing identity-related fraud and corruption.

- efficient human-resource management practices, norms and standards
- healthy, safe working environments for all public servants
- appropriate governance structures and decision-making
- citizen engagement and public participation
- addressing corruption effectively
- contributing towards improved public service and administration in Africa and the international arena.

Home affairs

The Department of Home Affairs is the custodian of the identity of all South African citizens, critical to which is the issuance of birth, marriage and death certificates; identity documents and passports; as well as citizenship; and naturalisation and permanent residency certificates. This goes beyond merely issuing documents and encompasses the safe maintenance and archiving of biometric and demographic records of citizens and residents of the country.

The department is also responsible for the effective, secure and humane management of immigration.

Public entities and other agencies falling under the department include the:

- Government Printing Works
- Electoral Commission
- Film and Publication Board.

Permanent residence

The department is responsible for admitting people suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers who are in short supply locally.

Applications are particularly encouraged from industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns or establish new concerns in South Africa.

Those wishing to enter the country as work seekers or for study purposes must have the relevant permit, which is issued outside the country.

Independent Electoral Commission (IEC)

The IEC is a permanent body created by the Constitution to promote and safeguard democracy in South Africa. Although publicly funded and accountable to Parliament, the commission is independent of government. Its immediate task is the impartial management of free and fair elections at all levels of government.

Local government elections were held in May 2011. The highest-ever voter turnout in local elections since 2000 was recorded. The turnout was 57,54% of the estimated over 22,7 million eligible voters in the country. The number of councillors appointed from these elections increased by 12,3% and 8,5% from the 2000 and 2006 elections respectively.

Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy (Palama)

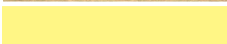
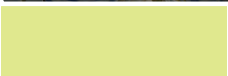
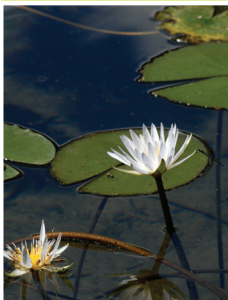
Palama (Sesotho for “ascend”), as the public-sector training academy, has a central role to play in building the capacity of the public sector to perform more effectively.

Palama’s offerings address the practical management competencies required for improved service delivery in all spheres of government.

Special courses are developed and customised to meet department-specific training needs.



POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



PROVINCES

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

PROVINCES

South Africa is a country where various cultures merge to form a unique nation, proud of its heritage.

The country boasts some of the world's most breathtaking scenery and features an amazing display of bird and wildlife species, which include the well-known Big Five (lion, leopard, elephant, buffalo and rhino).

South Africa has nine provinces. Each province has its own legislature, premier and executive council.

The country has common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe, while Mozambique and Swaziland lie to the north-east. Completely enclosed by South African territory in the south-east is the mountain kingdom of Lesotho.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, lying on the south-eastern South African coast, is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the stretch known as the Wild Coast.

The region boasts remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof, renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

In the Eastern Cape, various floral habitats meet. Along the coast, the northern tropical forests intermingle with the more temperate woods of the south.



Eastern Cape

Capital:	Bhisho
Principal languages:	
isiXhosa	83,4%
Afrikaans	9,3%
English	3,6%
Population:	6 829 958 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011</i>)
% share of total population:	13,5%
Area:	169 580 km ²
% of total area:	13,9%



The province is serviced by airports situated in Port Elizabeth, East London, Mthatha and Bhisho.

Free State



Free State

Capital:	Bloemfontein
Principal languages:	
Sesotho	64,4%
Afrikaans	11,9%
isiXhosa	9,1%
Population:	2 759 644 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011</i>)
% share of total population:	5,46%
Area:	129 480 km ²
% of total area:	10,6%



The Free State, a province of wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns, lies in the heart of South Africa. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

The capital, Bloemfontein, houses the Supreme Court of Appeal, a leading university and some top schools.

Mining, particularly gold, is the biggest employer, followed by manufacturing.

A gold reef of over 400 km stretches across Gauteng and the Free State.

The province accounts for 30% of South Africa's total gold production, and contributes significant amounts of silver, bituminous coal and diamonds.

Known as the "bread basket" of South Africa, about 90% of the province is under cultivation for crop production.

Gauteng

Gauteng is the economic centre of South Africa and the continent, responsible for over 34,8% of the country's total

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

PROVINCES

According to the South African Weather Service, the:

- Hottest place in South Africa is Letaba (Limpopo), with a mean annual temperature of 23,3° C and an average annual maximum temperature of 35° C.
- Coldest place in South Africa is Buffelsfontein near Molteno (Eastern Cape), with a mean annual temperature of 11,3° C and an average annual minimum temperature of 2,8° C.
- Highest ever rainfall in one year was measured at Jonkershoek in the Western Cape (3 874 mm in 1950). The wettest place in South Africa is Matiwa, with an average annual rainfall of 2 004 mm (calculated over a 60-year period). The driest place in South Africa is Alexander Bay in the Northern Cape, with an average annual rainfall of only 46 mm.
- Windiest place in South Africa is Cape Point (Western Cape), which experiences only 2% of all hours in the year with calm conditions. The annual average wind speed is 14,1 m/s, with 42,1% of the wind speeds greater than 8 m/s. The strongest wind gust ever in South Africa occurred at Beaufort West (Western Cape) on 16 May 1984 and measured 186 km/h.



gross domestic product (GDP), although it is the smallest of South Africa's nine provinces.

Gauteng is also the financial-services capital of Africa, as more than 70 foreign banks have their head offices in the province, as do at least the same number of South African banks, stockbrokers and insurance giants.

Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the most important economic sectors.

Johannesburg, nicknamed "Egoli" (Place of Gold), is the capital of the province and a city of contrasts. South of Johannesburg is Soweto.

There are 159 mines – 44 of them gold mines – in Gauteng, that together account for a quarter of South Africa's total mineral production. Most of the mining is for gold – 80% of Gauteng's output.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport.

Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies Pretoria, the administrative capital of South Africa and home to the Union Buildings.

The Gautrain started running in June 2010 and now carries passengers between Johannesburg and Pretoria – stress-free and in less than 40 minutes.



Gauteng

Capital:	Johannesburg
Principal languages:	
isiZulu	21,5%
Afrikaans	14,4%
Sesotho	13,1%
English	12,5%
Population:	11 328 203 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011</i>)
% share of the total population:	22,4%
Area:	17 010 km ²
% of total area:	1,4%



Gauteng offers high bird diversity, as it straddles the transition between several different biomes. About 350 species are regularly present, and many more have been recorded.

Gauteng offers the visitor 60 endemic species or near endemics to the southern African region.

KwaZulu-Natal



KwaZulu-Natal

Capital:	Pietermaritzburg
Principal languages:	
isiZulu	80,9%
English	13,6%
Afrikaans	1,5%
Population:	10 819 130 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011</i>)
% share of the total population:	21,39%
Area:	92 100 km ²
% of total area:	7,6%



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

PROVINCES

KwaZulu-Natal is one of the country's most popular holiday destinations.

This verdant region includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast. Washed by the warm Indian Ocean, it stretches from Port Edward in the south, and northwards to the Mozambique boundary.

In addition to the magnificent coastline, the province also boasts sweeping savanna in the east, and the majestic Drakensberg mountain range in the west.

Visitors to KwaZulu-Natal can disembark at the King Shaka International Airport, which opened in April 2010. Alternatively, they can make use of the extensive national road network.

The forestry, wood and wood products sector enables KwaZulu-Natal to participate in various associated businesses such as furniture-making.

Limpopo

Limpopo, South Africa's northernmost province, borders onto Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal entrance to Africa.

Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, spectacular scenery and a wealth of historical and cultural treasures.

This province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, which is generally known as Bushveld.



Limpopo

Capital:	Polokwane
Principal languages:	
Sesotho sa Leboa	52,1%
Xitsonga	22,4%
Tshivenda	15,9%
Population:	5 554 657 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011</i>)
% share of the total population:	10,98%
Area:	123 910 km ²
% of total area:	10,2%



The province's natural resources include more than 50 provincial reserves, as well as several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is situated along the eastern boundary of Limpopo with Mozambique.

Mpumalanga



Mpumalanga

Capital:	Mbombela
Principal languages:	
siSwati	30,8%
isiZulu	26,4%
isiNdebele	12,1%
Population:	3 657 181 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011</i>)
% share of the total population:	7,23%
Area:	79 490 km ²
% of total area:	6,5%



Mpumalanga means "Place Where the Sun Rises". Due to the province's spectacular scenic beauty and abundance of wildlife, it is one of South Africa's major tourist destinations.

The area has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible.

Because of its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, such as the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Mbombela (previously Nelspruit) is the capital of the province, and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Other important towns are eMalahleni (previously Witbank), Standerton, Piet Retief, Malelane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie.

Mpumalanga falls mainly within the Grassland Biome. The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

Northern Cape



Northern Cape

Capital:	Kimberley
Principal languages:	
Afrikaans	68%
Setswana	20,8%
isiXhosa	2,5%
Population:	1 096 731 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011</i>)
% share of the total population:	2,17%
Area:	361 830 km ²
% of total area:	29,7%



The Northern Cape is the largest province in South Africa, (slightly bigger than Germany) – taking up almost a third of the country's total land area.

The province is noted for its San rock art, diamond diggings, 4x4 safaris and the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park. It is a vast stretch of semi-desert land.

The distance from the capital, Kimberley, on the eastern border to Springbok in the west, is more than 900 km. It is a large, dry region of fluctuating temperatures and varying topographies.

The Northern Cape lies to the south of the Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry.

Away from the Orange, the landscape is characterised by vast arid plains with outcroppings of rock piles.

The province is renowned for its spectacular display of spring flowers, which, for a short period every year, attracts thousands of tourists.

Agriculture is one of the mainstay sectors of the Northern Cape's economy and is therefore critical in economic planning.

North West



North West

Capital:	Mahikeng
Principal languages:	
Setswana	65,4%
Afrikaans	7,5%
isiXhosa	5,8%
Population:	3 253 390 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011</i>)
% share of the total population:	6,43%
Area:	116 320 km ²
% of total area:	9,5%



North West lies in the north of South Africa, on the Botswana border, fringed by the Kalahari desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. It is known as the “Platinum Province” for the wealth of the metal it has underground.

The province boasts a year-round sunny climate, exciting wildlife destinations such as the Pilanesberg National Park and Madikwe Game Reserve, various cultural and historical attractions, as well as popular tourist destinations such as Sun City.

North West is centrally located on the subcontinent with direct road and rail links to all southern African countries, and with its own airport near the capital city, Mahikeng (previously Mafikeng).

Most economic activity is concentrated in the southern region (between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp), Rustenburg, and the eastern region, where more than 83,3% of GDP per region of the province is generated.

Western Cape

The Western Cape’s natural beauty, complemented by its hospitality, cultural diversity, excellent wine and colourful

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

PROVINCES



Western Cape

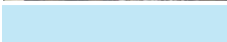
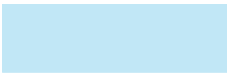
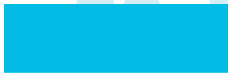
Capital:	Cape Town
Principal languages:	
Afrikaans	55,3%
isiXhosa	23,7%
English	19,3%
Population:	5 287 863 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2011</i>)
% share of the total population:	10,45%
Area:	129 370 km ²
% of total area:	10,6%



cuisine, make the province one of the world's greatest tourist attractions.

Cape Town, the legislative capital, is one of the world's most beautiful cities and is a must-see for tourists. Other important towns in the province include Worcester and Stellenbosch, known for their winelands; George, renowned for indigenous timber and vegetable produce and for its world-class golf courses; and Oudtshoorn, known for its ostrich products and the celebrated Cango caves.

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



ECONOMY

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ECONOMY

Statistics South Africa announced in May 2011 that the economy showed growth of 4,51% in the first quarter of 2011. Parallel to the anaemic growth of the advanced economies, economic activity in the developing economies also registered a slower pace of increase in the second quarter of 2011. Following the brisk rate of economic expansion recorded in the first quarter of 2011, real growth in the South African economy slowed substantially in the second quarter to an annualised rate of 1,3%.

Growth was expected to be 3,4% in 2012, rising to just over 4% in 2014 and 2015.

New Growth Path (NGP)

The NGP sets out a vision for creating a competitive, fair and socially cohesive economy. The NGP puts employment at the centre of economic policy. It identifies how greater efficiencies can be achieved in the economy, and the investments needed to create an advanced, 21st-century infrastructure. The NGP is expected to create large-scale, sustainable jobs in key sectors through a collaborative approach. This will encourage trade, innovation and economic growth of up to 7% per year – ensuring South Africa remains at the forefront of fast-growing emerging economies and an attractive investment destination.

South Africa is open to increasing trade and investment among the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa countries, being a viable emerging market with potential as an innovative hub, a sound investment destination and a leading emerging market economy.

By August 2011, government had created thousands of jobs, including:

South Africa's ascension to the Brazil-Russia-India-China (BRIC) grouping is recognition of the country's potential and places it alongside leading economies of the future. South Africa's economy is smaller than those of Brazil, Russia, India and China, but it is also the gateway to the African continent, linking the BRIC economies to more than a billion consumers. Africa is the fastest-growing region after China and India. South Africa is the 27th biggest economy in the world, with a gross domestic product that the International Monetary Fund puts at US\$354 billion.



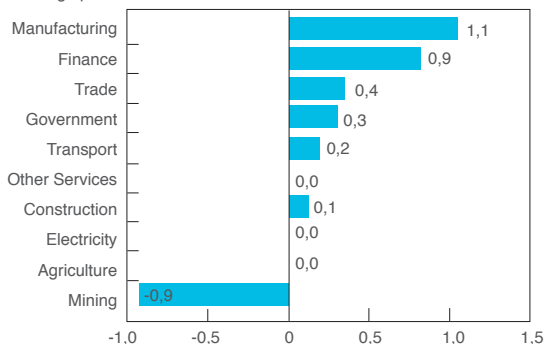
- almost 60 000 jobs created by the Department of Trade and Industry's support and incentive programmes in 2010/11
- the support of over 100 000 smallholder farmers by the national and provincial agricultural departments
- environmental employment schemes, such as the Department of Water Affairs' Working for Water and the Working for Land programmes, which were expected to provide over 30 000 full-time job equivalents in 2011, and doubling to 60 000 in 2011
- a rural youth-employment programme, which had created 7 500 jobs.

The NGP is not isolated from other government initiatives such as the Industrial Policy Action Plan II (IPAP II) and various infrastructure programmes that will lead to job creation, which is the central focus of the NGP. These include:

- addressing the country's ageing water and sanitation infrastructure, which requires R10 billion over the next five years
- replacing commuter rail rolling stock at a budget of about R89 billion, to be accompanied by the recapitalising investment in related and auxiliary infrastructure
- redressing South Africa's modal imbalance of freight as an attempt to increase rail capacity and rail-use capacity – Transnet has budgeted R35 billion

Contribution to growth in real gross domestic product in the first quarter

Percentage points



Source: Quarterly Bulletin, June 2012

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ECONOMY

- arresting degradation of the non-toll road network (140 000 km of the total 750 000 km need to be maintained) will require R75 billion in the next few years
- Eskom plans to spend R550 billion in capital expenditure until 2017 and has to create an additional 50 gigawatts by 2025.

Framework for South Africa's response to the international economic crisis

The Department of Economic Development leads the implementation of the measures in the framework for South Africa's response to the international crisis.

The implemented measures included:

- The Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) established a R6,1-billion fund to assist distressed companies. By February 2012, the IDC had saved and created 26 309 jobs.
- The IDC established a jobs fund, financed through the issue of a R2-billion development bond, which the Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF) purchased. Some R219 million of this R2 billion is included in the R6,1-billion fund for distressed companies. It was announced in February 2012, that the UIF would invest another R2 million in job creation.
- The department, together with the Department of Labour, the IDC and the Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration, established a R2,9-billion training lay-off scheme, to provide for the training of workers as an alternative to retrenchment. By the end of January 2011, 6 351 workers had benefited.

Domestic output

The pace of real output growth in the South African economy slowed considerably in the second quarter of 2011.

Growth in real gross domestic product (GDP) excluding the volatile primary sector, also moderated steeply from an annualised rate of 5,5% in the first quarter of 2011 to 1,6% in the second quarter.

Domestic expenditure

Consistent with the moderation in domestic production, growth in real gross domestic expenditure decelerated from an annualised rate of 7,9% in the first quarter of 2011 to 1,3% in the second quarter.

In June 2011, National Treasury's R9-billion Jobs Fund, which aims to create 150 000 jobs over three years, was accepting applications from companies and non-governmental organisations with innovative job-creation projects.



The aim was to give R2 billion in grants in 2011/12 to those companies in the private sector that create jobs. The fund will run for three years and be administered by the Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA). The department chose the DBSA to administer the fund because of its footprint, which covers over 200 municipalities across the country and its experience in funding community development projects.

The fund targets established companies with a good track record and that plan to expand existing programmes or pilot innovative approaches to employment creation, with a special focus on opportunities for young people. The fund will target four areas, namely enterprise development, local infrastructure development, support for work seekers and institutional capacity-building.

Real inventory investment slowed while real gross fixed capital formation accelerated meaningfully over the period. Following a robust increase of 5,2% in the first quarter of 2011, growth in real final consumption expenditure by households slowed to an annualised rate of 3,8% in the second quarter.

Price inflation

Twelve-month headline consumer services price inflation decelerated to within the inflation target range in July 2010, moderating in subsequent months to 4,5% in February 2011, before rising to 5,5% in July 2011. In the consumer services basket, price increases in the health, transport and education categories exceeded the upper limit of the inflation target range in July 2011.

Changes in food prices at the manufactured level reverted to inflation from November 2010 and continued to climb in ensuing months to the level of 6,3% in July 2011.

At agricultural level, a period of producer food price deflation lasting 26 consecutive months, made way for inflation, when it soared to 8,9% in May 2011 before moderating again to 5% in July.

Exchange rates

Subsequent to a decline of 5% in the first quarter of 2011, the effective exchange rate of the Rand decreased by a further 1,5% from the end of March 2011 to the end of June.

The Rand depreciated most notably against the Euro and the Japanese Yen, partly as a result of the rescue packages granted to certain European countries to avoid sovereign debt restructuring and to assist Japan in recovering from the natural disaster it experienced earlier in 2011.

Elevated commodity prices and a weaker American Dollar partly supported the external value of the Rand in April 2011.

During July and August 2011, the nominal effective exchange value of the Rand decreased by 4% as it depreciated against all major currencies.

The real effective exchange rate of the Rand decreased by 0,7% in the year to June 2011.

The average net daily turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange decreased from US\$23,3 billion in the first quarter of 2011 to US\$22,6 billion in the second quarter. This could largely be attributed to a decline in the value of non-resident swap transactions, which went from US\$11,1 billion a day to US\$9,5 billion a day over the period.

As a result, domestic banks' shares (authorised dealers in foreign exchange) in turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange gained some ground.

Foreign trade and payments

The pickup in global demand alongside elevated international commodity prices boosted South African producers' export earnings and brought about a steady widening of the surplus on the trade account of the balance of payments throughout 2010.

In the first half of 2011, imports rose stronger than exports, resulting in smaller trade surpluses in the first and second quarters.

These developments, and also a moderate increase in the shortfall on the services, income and current transfer account of the balance of payments, gave rise to the current-account deficit going from 1% of GDP in the fourth quarter of 2010 to 3,1% and 3,3% respectively in the first and second quarters of 2011.

Having contracted by 3,6% in the first quarter of 2011, the volume of merchandise exports rose by 3,7% in the second quarter, in part also reflecting the low base in the preceding quarter.

Department of Economic Development

The Department of Economic Development, which was established in 2009, assumed responsibility for coordinating government's work on the framework for South Africa's response to the international economic crisis. The department is also responsible for developing economic policy with broad, cross-cutting focus so that macro- and micro-economic policies reinforce each other and are both aligned to the electoral mandate. The department is responsible for economic development planning and works with other departments to ensure coordination around a programme that places decent work at the centre of government's economic policies to secure better employment outcomes.

Policy development

The department has identified a number of areas with the potential for new jobs. These are:

- infrastructure development
- the green economy
- the manufacturing sector
- knowledge-economy activities
- the rural, agriculture and agroprocessing sector
- tourism and business process services
- the social economy, which includes cooperatives
- public-sector growth
- the continental and regional economy.

An important policy focus for the department will be the creation of sustainable livelihoods and addressing the challenges of enterprises in the Second Economy.

Trade, investments and exports

Increasing the level of international trade is critical to domestic economic growth and development, and it is also an output linked to the outcome to create decent employment through inclusive economic growth.

The Department of Trade and Industry provides leadership on trade policy, and released the trade policy and strategy framework, which Cabinet adopted in July 2010.

The framework aims to promote the development of higher value-added, labour-absorbing production.

To complement this framework, the department has also developed strategies for export development and promotion, as well as investment promotion and facilitation.

A single integrated facilitation centre has been created to deal with investors and exporters.

The department has a network of foreign economic offices abroad to facilitate business on behalf of South African companies.

The department assists exporters by providing information, financial support and practical assistance to sustain growth in traditional markets and penetrate new high-growth markets, such as China, India, Russia and the Democratic Republic of Congo.

The focus is on investments that have a greater multiplier effect to the South African economy.

At multilateral level, South Africa continues to play a prominent and active role in the World Trade Organisation (WTO), and supports the consolidation of the G20 group of developing countries, which seeks to ensure a developmental outcome in industrial tariff negotiations.

Progress has been made in trade integration in the Southern African Development Community (SADC). Over the medium term, the SADC will focus on addressing rules of origin, trade facilitation and non-tariff barriers.

Industrial development

The clothing, textiles and automotive sectors have been identified as key strategic sectors for which the Department of Trade and Industry will continue improving incentive schemes to boost manufacturing capacity and support job creation.

Industrial policy interventions to support developmental objectives will be reviewed.

The challenge is to substantially raise the level of industrial policy interventions in a range of sectors and simultaneously build the necessary capacity in the department to manage this upscaling.

In relation to incentives for industries and enterprises, further work is planned to align the industrial financing regime with industrial policy objectives.

Production incentives in the clothing and textiles and automotive sectors will be increasingly grant-based, thus reducing reliance on tax incentives.

Over the medium term, the department will also focus on improving the efficiency of the incentive administration system to record applications and deal with claims, verify information and document all correspondence.

Industrial Policy Action Plan II

The IPAP II 2011/12 to 2013/14 was launched in April 2011 as a three-year rolling industrial development road map. In terms of the breadth of the interventions outlined and the requirement of intergovernmental coordination and multistakeholder involvement, IPAP was a first of its kind in South Africa. The IPAP II 2010/12 to 2013/14 represents a qualitative step forward in government's industrial policy efforts and has achieved much progress.

Multilateral engagements

South Africa is a key player in global institutions and is performing an increasingly critical role in the fast-changing governance landscape.

The country is a member of the International Monetary Fund, the World Bank, the WTO and the United Nations System, including the International Atomic Energy Agency. South Africa plays a pivotal role in reshaping global governance and financial and trade architecture. This is reflected in its membership of the G20 group of advanced and emerging economies, in line with the shifting balance of global economic power.

Economic transformation

The Department of Trade and Industry aims to foster the growth of small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) and cooperatives by:

- facilitating the provision of business-development support to increase the current number of SMMEs (estimated at two million) and to increase the contributions of SMMEs and cooperatives to GDP from the current estimated 40% to 45% by 2014
- funding equipment to assist with the establishment of 300 small-scale cooperatives over the next three years, resulting in 1 500 new jobs or memberships of cooperatives
- facilitating access to procurement opportunities for SMMEs and cooperatives in 2012 by overseeing the implementation of the 10-products strategy, which is aimed at increasing the share of SMMEs and cooperatives in government and state-owned enterprise (SOE) procurement
- integrating entrepreneurship into the curriculum and research activities of four universities and two further education and training colleges over the next three years

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ECONOMY

Trade relations between India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA) have improved despite the global economic recession. The IBSA international tripartite grouping is aimed at boosting cooperation between the countries.



IBSA had done particularly well in the targets it set for increasing trade and is expected to achieve the target of US\$25 billion dollars in combined trade by 2015.

IBSA countries have numerous competitive advantages offering practical cooperation that needs to be built on, such as in the area of small business development, where Brazil and India have made big strides. Industrial policy is another area where South Africa is gaining benefits from the relationship.

A business forum, held in October 2011 in South Africa, was part of the fifth IBSA leadership meeting hosted by President Jacob Zuma. Resolutions of the forum will be tabled at future heads of state and government dialogue sessions.

- strengthening and upscaling the incubator programme to generate 600 new enterprises that can provide at least 5 000 jobs by 2014
- aligning Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) with industrial policy to facilitate the increased participation of black people and women in priority sectors by 2013
- supporting 60 innovative projects and at least 6 000 students to participate in the development of new technologies over the next three years, thus contributing to the establishment of new SMMEs
- supporting the development of at least three underdeveloped areas through targeted interventions by 2014
- improving the competitiveness of at least 120 companies by 2013 through the Workplace Challenge Programme.

State-owned enterprises

SOEs invested over R105 billion, mostly in infrastructure, during 2011/12. The NGP sets the target of five million new jobs by 2020.

In July 2011, Cabinet announced that President Jacob Zuma was heading the Infrastructure Commission, which was set up to improve visibility and coordination of South Africa's R860-billion public investment drive. It will include all spheres of government, various national departments and SOEs.

It will seek to unblock regulatory and funding constraints, set five-year project priorities, create certainty about

In the automotive sector, government's industrial incentive schemes and the solid platform for investment are attracting new investment by major multinational corporations.



In February 2011, it was announced that Mercedes-Benz would use South Africa as one of only four locations globally to build the next-generation popular C-class vehicle at its East London plant, creating about 1 500 new jobs in supplier industries.

General Motors will produce the Spark entry-level passenger car at its Port Elizabeth plant, creating 500 additional jobs. Volkswagen is producing the new Polo left-hand drive in Uitenhage for export markets. Ford Motor Company is producing the new-generation pick-up truck at its Pretoria plant and will increase the local content of its vehicles from 35% to more than 60%.

From August 2011, BMW started producing the new 3-series all-wheel drive in South Africa. Toyota has announced a major expansion of its warehouse capacity, involving close to R10 billion in new investment and will create additional work opportunities.

expected developmental and industrial spin-offs, support the revitalisation of rail infrastructure, gain a handle on the life-cycle maintenance challenge and improve linkages to poor and rural communities.

Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The EPWP is a government-wide intervention to create both short and ongoing work opportunities.

The EPWP continues to be a strategic intervention to alleviate poverty and unemployment through the creation of labour-intensive work opportunities.

The EPWP is characterised by, among other things, caring for the elderly and sick, educating pre-school children, rehabilitating and cleaning up the environment, as well as upgrading and maintaining crucial infrastructure such as roads, bridges, water and sanitation.

In 2011, Phase Two of the EPWP was in the second year of implementation, and the programme had committed to delivering 4,5 million work opportunities over five years.

The EPWP had been allocated R679 million for incentive grants to municipalities and R267 million for provinces. It created 643 116 work opportunities in 2010/11, exceeding its target of 642 000 work opportunities for the financial year.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ECONOMY

This proves the programme is making a significant contribution to government's concerted efforts to reduce unemployment and poverty by 2014.

The sector breakdown of work opportunities created under the EPWP in 2010/11 was:

- infrastructure: 277 100
- environment and culture: 107 189
- social: 131 979
- non-state (community works programme): 92 136
- non-profit organisations: 34 712.

The Employment Services for South Africa (Essa) is an employment service provided by the Department of Labour's Public Employment Services entity, whereby unemployed and prospective employers register on the system. The system matches people to posts.



The *Essa Research Report* revealed that over 700 000 of the 4,3 million unemployed people were registered as work seekers on the Essa system. Of the 4,3 million unemployed, only 14,5% were registered at the Unemployment Insurance Fund.

The challenges Essa is facing includes staff and information technology systems capacity, interrelationships between stakeholders and matching and placing more work seekers in employment. From 2007 to 2010, 251 748 opportunities were registered with Essa, growing by an average of 96%. There were 2 714 employers registered on Essa.

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



FINANCE

South Africa's economic growth typically follows the average global trend closely. The South African economy has averaged about 3% growth a year since 2009. Against the background of the slowdown in the global economy, real gross domestic product (GDP) growth is expected to fall to about 2,7% in 2012.

In the Budget Speech in February 2012, the Minister of Finance, Mr Pravin Gordhan, announced that government expected a recovery to 3,6% and 4,2% growth in 2013 and 2014. The deficit on the current account of the balance of payments is expected to widen from 3,3% in 2011 to 4,4% GDP in 2014.

National Treasury aims to promote economic development, good governance, social progress and rising living standards through the accountable, economic, efficient, equitable and sustainable management of South Africa's public finances.

National Treasury endeavours to advance economic growth, Broad-Based Black Empowerment, progressive realisation of human rights and the elimination of poverty. It is responsible for preparing a sound and sustainable national budget and an equitable division of resources among the three spheres of government. It strives to raise fiscal resources equitably and efficiently and manage government's financial assets and liabilities soundly, promoting transparency and effective financial management.

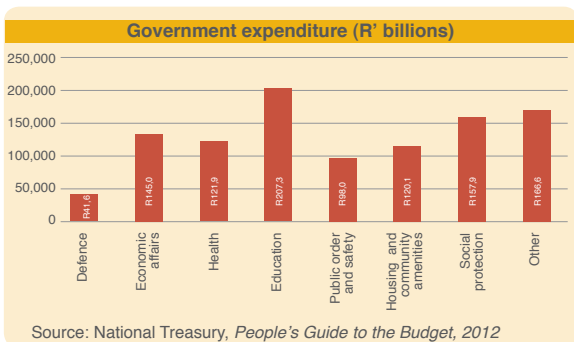
The Constitution stipulates a framework for the division of responsibilities between national, provincial and local government. It prescribes an equitable division of revenue between the spheres of government, taking into account their respective functions. It also creates an independent auditor-general (AG) and an independent central bank, and sets out the principles governing financial accountability to Parliament, as well as the annual budget process.

Fiscal policy framework

Government's fiscal policy seeks to support structural reforms of the South African economy consistent with long-run growth, employment creation and an equitable distribution of income.

Fiscal policy seeks to:

- present a fuller picture of government finances and the effects of policy decisions
- ensure a sound and sustainable balance between government's spending, tax and borrowing requirements



- improve domestic savings to support a higher level of investment and reduce the need to borrow abroad
- keep government consumption spending at an affordable level
- contribute to lower inflation and a sustainable balance of payments
- support an export-friendly trade and industrial strategy to improve South Africa's competitiveness.

The economy and fiscal stance

The focus of the 2012/13 Budget, announced in February 2012, was on government's infrastructure-development programme. It aims to grow the economy, create jobs and improve people's lives through massive investment in infrastructure.

The State has chosen five major programmes for infrastructure development:

- Geographically strategic projects such as:
 - > The development and integration of rail, road and water infrastructure around the Waterberg and Steelpoort areas in Limpopo to unlock the enormous mineral belt of coal, platinum, palladium, chrome and other minerals. Rail transport in Mpumalanga will be expanded, connecting coalfields to power stations. Parts of the North West will also benefit from the greater focus on infrastructure.
 - > Improving the movement of goods and economic integration through the Durban-Free State-Gauteng

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

FINANCE

logistics and industrial corridor. Transnet has developed the Market Demand Strategy, which entails an investment over the next seven years of R300 billion in capital projects. There are various improvements to the Durban-Gauteng Rail Corridor and the phased development of a new 16-million ton a year manganese export channel through the Port of Ngqura in Nelson Mandela Bay.

- > The development of a major new South Eastern node that will improve the industrial and agricultural development and export capacity of the Eastern Cape.
- > Expansion of water, roads, rail and electricity infrastructure in the North West. Ten priority roads will be upgraded.
- > Expansion of the iron-ore rail line between Sishen in the Northern Cape and Saldanha Bay in the Western Cape, which will create large numbers of jobs and industrial activity in both provinces.
- Critical social infrastructure projects that will lay the basis for the National Health Insurance system, such as the refurbishment of hospitals and nurses' homes.
- Building new universities in Mpumalanga and the Northern Cape. Some R300 million has been allocated for the preparatory work towards these facilities.
- The Square Kilometre Array radio telescope in partnership with eight other African countries and Australia.

Exchange rates of the Rand (percentage change)

	30/09/10 – 31/12/10	31/12/10 – 31/03/11	31/03/11 – 30/06/11	30/06/11 – 31/08/11
Weighted average*	5,4	-5,0	-1,5	-4,0
Euro	7,3	-8,2	-2,0	-3,1
US dollar	5,1	-2,4	0,0	-3,5
Chinese yuan	3,6	-3,0	-1,3	-4,7
British pound	7,8	-6,2	0,8	-5,1
Japanese yen	2,8	-0,7	-2,8	-8,0

* Against a basket of 15 currencies

Source: South African Reserve Bank, *Quarterly Bulletin*, September 2011.

- The North-South Road and Rail Corridor, which South Africa champions and which is part of the African Union's New Partnership for Africa's Development Presidential Infrastructure Championing initiative.

Debt management

South Africa's countercyclical response to the economic crisis generated a significant national government borrowing requirement, which peaked at 6,8% of GDP in 2009/10. However, sound economic and fiscal policies, deep and liquid domestic capital markets, and the availability of international funding enabled government to finance the 2010/11 budget deficit for less than originally projected.

As a result, debt-service costs for 2010/11 were R4,8 billion lower than expected. Lower debt-service costs create more space to fund investment in economic infrastructure, which creates jobs, and to increase spending on social priorities such as education and health. While the gap between expenditure and revenue is projected to narrow in line with the economic recovery, national government borrowing in 2011 remained substantial at 5,4% of GDP, declining to 4,2% of GDP in 2013/14. Debt-service costs are expected to increase gradually to 2,9% of GDP in 2013/14.

Managing public finances

Transforming public-sector financial management is one of National Treasury's key objectives. To this end, National Treasury has been implementing the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 since 1 April 2000.

South Africa has improved its ranking and remains the highest-ranked African country in sub-Saharan Africa on the World Economic Forum's global competitiveness scale, released in September 2011.



The country moved up to number 50 on the list, and is also the second-highest ranked of the BRICS countries (Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa). South Africa especially benefited from its economy – it ranked 25th in market size.

It also ranked fourth in financial market development, which was "particularly impressive" and showed "high confidence in South Africa's financial markets at a time when trust is returning only slowly in many other parts of the world," according to the *Global Competitiveness Report 2011 – 2012*.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

FINANCE

In October 2011, the stock exchanges of the BRICS emerging market bloc – Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa – announced an initiative to cross-list benchmark equity index derivatives on each other's boards, in an effort to expose investors to opportunities in the world's leading developing markets.



The initiative brings together the BM&F BOVESPA from Brazil, Moscow Interbank Currency Exchange from Russia, Hong Kong Exchanges and Clearing Limited as the initial China representative, and South Africa's Johannesburg Stock Exchange Ltd.

The National Stock Exchange of India and the BSE Limited (formerly known as Bombay Stock Exchange) have signed letters of support and will join the alliance after finalising outstanding requirements.

These seven exchanges represent a combined listed market capitalisation of US\$9,02 trillion, equity market trading value per month of \$422 billion and 9 481 companies listed. They also accounted for over 18% of all exchange-listed derivative contracts traded by volume worldwide in June 2011.

Since the implementation of the PFMA, 1999, there have been measurable improvements in financial management in both the national and provincial spheres of government, which include, among other things:

- an improved linkage between planning and budgeting, whereby departments are now required to compile and table strategic plans that are consistent with their budget envelope
- strategic plans and budget documentation containing improved information on measurable objectives expressed in terms of quantity, quality and timeliness
- departments submitting monthly expenditure reports on actual expenditure incurred, and on projected expenditure for the remainder of the financial year
- risk-management processes, which are being implemented by institutions
- establishing internal-audit functions and audit committees in all departments
- setting accounting standards in accordance with best accounting practices, both locally and internationally
- finalising and submitting financial statements to the AG within two months of the end of the financial year
- tabling annual reports in the legislature within six months of the end of the financial year.

In October 2011, government relaxed foreign-exchange control rules for individuals, making it easier for citizens to invest up to R5 million abroad a year, comprising an annual R4 million foreign investment allowance plus a R1 million single discretionary allowance.



National Treasury also allows companies to top up capital in their offshore businesses, and has relaxed rules for corporations that want to invest outside their current business lines.

Limits for individuals on alimony, wedding and travel allowances were done away with.

Auditor-General

The Constitution guarantees the independence of the AG. The office audits national, provincial and local government.

The AG has the power to audit the activities of public entities without the approval of the chief executive officer or directors.

Taxation

In 2010/11, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) collected R2 billion more than the targeted R672,2 billion, representing an increase over the previous financial year of R75,6 billion or 12,6%.

In 2010/11, government spent R891 billion of the budgeted R897 billion. The preliminary budget deficit was expected to be 5% of the GDP.

The more than one million jobs lost during the recent recession limited the growth in revenue from personal income tax. While Sars' personal income tax revenue grew, it was 0,5% below the target.

Value-added tax (VAT) collection rose to R184,2 billion from R147 billion in 2010. Of the R674,2 billion collected, R226,3 billion came from individual taxpayers, while companies paid R133,4 billion.

A 2011 report by the World Bank, the International Finance Corporation and accounting firm PricewaterhouseCoopers ranked South Africa's tax system as number one among emerging economies.



The system was ranked for its efficiency and for easing the compliance burden on taxpayers. The report found that South Africa took the lead as a result of first-world initiatives taken by the Government, such as eFiling.

The revenue collected from the fuel levy earned Sars R35 billion, which was 2,2% above target, and contributed 5,2% to the overall revenue collected. This increased from 4% in 2008/09 to 4,8% in 2009/10.

Main sources of revenue

Income tax (IT)

IT is government's main source of income and is levied in terms of the IT Act, 1962.

Tax is levied on taxable income, which, in essence, consists of total income less exemptions and allowable deductions according to the Act. The remuneration received by or accrued to a person is subject to tax and the employer deducts employees' tax in the form of pay as you earn.

A person who receives income other than remuneration, such as income from trade, profession or investments, which is not subject to employees' tax, is required, under certain circumstances, to register as a provisional taxpayer and must pay provisional tax.

Value-added tax

VAT is levied on the supply of all goods and services rendered by registered vendors throughout the business cycle.

Effectively, VAT is levied on the value added by an enterprise. Vendors levy and pay over the tax included in their prices, resulting in VAT being paid by the final consumer. VAT is also levied on the importation of goods and services into South Africa. It is levied at the standard rate of 14%, but certain supplies are zero-rated or are exempt from VAT.

South African Reserve Bank

The bank, which is independent, formulates and implements monetary policy and regulates the supply of money by influencing its cost.

An important responsibility of the bank is to ensure that the banking system as a whole is sound and meets the requirements of the community.

The bank acts as a banker to other banking institutions. It is also the custodian of the statutory cash reserves and provides facilities for the clearing and settlement of inter-bank obligations.

In February 2011, the Johannesburg Stock Exchange (JSE) Ltd announced that it was getting a new trading system that would make equity-market transactions 400 times faster. The migration was planned for the first half of 2012.



The JSE would move its equity-market trading activity – the buying and selling of company shares – onto a system called Millennium Exchange. The new system will operate from Johannesburg, instead of London where it was based.

Monetary policy

The primary objective of monetary policy in South Africa is to achieve and maintain price stability in the interest of sustainable and balanced economic development and growth. Price stability reduces uncertainty in the economy and, therefore, provides a favourable environment for growth and employment creation. Furthermore, low inflation contributes to the protection of the purchasing power of all South Africans, particularly the poor who have no means of defending themselves against continually rising prices.

The Reserve Bank has full operational autonomy. Monetary policy is set by the bank's Monetary Policy Committee (MPC), which conducts monetary policy within a flexible inflation-targeting framework. This allows for inflation to be out of the target range as a result of first-round effects of a supply shock and for the bank to determine the appropriate time horizon for restoring inflation to within the target range. This flexibility does not relieve the bank of its responsibility with respect to returning inflation to within the target range but allows for interest rate smoothing over the cycle, which may mitigate any output variability from the monetary policy response to the shock.

The MPC maintained the repo rate at 5,5% at its meetings held in September and November 2011, extending the period during which the policy rate had been kept unchanged for almost a full year. The most recent period when the repo rate was kept on hold for almost such a long duration was between June 2005 and April 2006, when the MPC viewed the threats to the inflation outlook to be balanced enough not to require an adjustment to the policy stance.

The banking industry

As at the end of December 2010, 33 banking institutions – 12 locally controlled, six foreign-controlled, 13 registered branches and two mutual banks – were reporting data to

the Bank Supervision Department of the Reserve Bank. There were also 41 international banks with authorised representative offices in South Africa. The banking industry is characterised by a high degree of concentration, with four banks – ABSA Bank Ltd, The Standard Bank of South Africa Ltd, FirstRand Bank Ltd and Nedbank Ltd – dominating the sector.

Total banking-sector assets amounted to R3 122 billion at the end of December 2010, compared to R2 963 billion at the end of December 2009 (and R3 167 billion at the end of December 2008), representing year-on-year growth of 5,4%. Total assets of the four largest banks accounted for 84,1% of total banking-sector assets (December 2008: 84,7%). Gross loans and advances increased by 2,5% from R2 253 billion at the end of December 2009 to R2 309 billion at the end of December 2010 (after a 2,6% decrease between December 2008 and December 2009).

Insurance companies

The aim of short-term insurance is to put the insured in the same position they occupied immediately before the loss, depending on the terms and conditions of the policy contract. Examples of short-term insurance include motor-vehicle, household, theft and fire insurance.

By 31 March 2011, there were 108 short-term insurers.

Long-term insurance includes life and assistance policies that pay a benefit to dependants on the death of the insured person/s, endowment (savings) policies payable at a predetermined date, disability policies, pensions and retirement policies, or even a combination of these policies.

By 31 March 2011, there were 87 long-term insurers.

Development Bank of Southern Africa

The primary purpose of the bank is to promote economic development and growth, human-resource development and institutional capacity-building. The bank's mandate is focused on infrastructure.

Financial Services Board (FSB)

The FSB is an independent statutory body financed by levies imposed on regulated institutions and persons.

The FSB supervises institutions and services, in terms of several parliamentary Acts that entrust regulatory functions

to the registrars of long-term insurance, short-term insurance, friendly societies, pension funds, collective investment schemes, financial services providers, exchanges and financial markets.

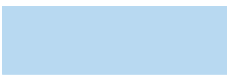


CHRYSLER

CHRYSLER

CHRYSLER

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



DOING BUSINESS IN SOUTH AFRICA

DOING BUSINESS IN SOUTH AFRICA

The Department of Economic Development is responsible to develop economic policy with broad, cross-cutting focus so that macro and micro-economic policy reinforce each other and are both aligned to the electoral mandate.

The department is responsible for economic development planning and works with other departments to ensure coordination around a programme that places decent work at the centre of government's economic policies to secure better employment outcomes. The department's 2011/12 budget was distributed as follows:

- R219,4 million for small business funding, through transfers to Khula and the South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund (Samaf). In April 2012, the Small Enterprise Finance Agency (Sefa) was launched, consolidating Khula, Samaf and the Industrial Development Corporation's (IDC) small business leading book.
- R141,8 million for the competition authorities
- R69,6 million for trade administration to the International Trade and Administration Commission (ITAC)
- R34 million for promoting agroprocessing to the IDC
- R23,3 million for policy development within the Department of Economic Development
- R35,1 million for economic planning and coordination
- R16,3 million for economic development and dialogue
- R55 million for administration, the Department of Economic Development and capital expenditure.

Khula, Samaf and the Industrial Development Corporation's (IDC) lending book merged to form the Small Enterprise Finance Agency (Sefa). Sefa was launched in April 2012.

In 2011, the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) increased its investment target to R102 billion over five years, a substantial increase over past rates of investment. It introduced a new low-cost lending facility for jobs-rich projects, at prime less 3%. It refocused investment to the New Growth Path industrial sectors.



Over the past 12 months, IDC approvals of funding grew strongly, from R8,7 billion to R13,5 billion, an increase of 55%.

One of the corporation's programmes include the following: IDC support for Ford encouraged the company to invest R3,4 billion here, and select South Africa as one of only three global production hubs for the Ford Ranger, for export to 148 countries, supporting jobs in Ford and its supplier companies.

Broadening economic participation

One of the key industrial policy goals is the promotion of a broader-based industrial path, where there is more participation by historically disadvantaged economic citizens and marginalised regions in the mainstream of the industrial economy. To this end, the department promotes enterprise development, economic empowerment, the development of skills for the economy, and the facilitation of economic infrastructure, and enhances technology and innovation.

The focus is on:

- improving productivity
- reducing the regulatory burden and cost of doing business
- improving access to finance for small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) and cooperatives
- improving innovation in the domestic economy
- promoting the development and sustainability of SMMEs and cooperatives
- encouraging entrepreneurship and self-employment.

Business-development support programmes will be strengthened and regulatory impact assessment addressed to create a conducive environment for enterprise growth.

The department aims to increase and diversify economic opportunities for black people, and for black-owned and women-owned enterprises, especially in priority industrial sectors.

It will undertake a review of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) legislation and regulations to enhance efficiency, and expand opportunities for broader participation in the economy. Special attention will be given to preferential procurement and black supplier development initiatives.

Department of Trade and Industry

The Department of Trade and Industry aims to lead and facilitate access to sustainable economic activity and employment for all South Africans. South Africa has trading relationships with over 200 countries and territories.

The department also aims to catalyse economic transformation and development, and to provide a predictable, competitive, equitable and socially responsible environment for investment, enterprise and trade for economic citizens.

In this way, the department contributes to achieving government's vision of an adaptive and restructured economy,

DOING BUSINESS IN SOUTH AFRICA

characterised by accelerated economic growth, employment creation and greater equity by 2014.

To contribute to greater shared growth in the country, the department is pursuing the goals of:

- significantly progressing BBBEE
- increasing the contribution of small enterprises to the economy
- contributing towards providing accessible, transparent and efficient access to redress
- contributing towards building skills, technology and infrastructure platforms from which enterprises can benefit
- increasing market-access opportunities for, and export of, South African goods and services
- increasing the overall level of direct investment, as well as investment in priority sectors
- repositioning the economy in higher value-added segments of value matrices in knowledge-driven manufacturing and services
- contributing towards the economic growth and development of the African continent within the New Partnership for Africa's Development framework
- building an efficient, effective and accessible organisation to achieve these outcomes.

Increasing the level of international trade is critical to domestic economic growth and development, and it is also an output linked to the outcome to create decent employment through inclusive economic growth.



Proudly South African is a *Buy Local* Campaign launched by government, organised business, organised labour and community organisations (represented in the National Economic Development and Labour Council) to boost job creation by promoting South African companies and locally made products. By

buying Proudly South African, consumers/businesses are making a personal contribution to nation-building. Buy Local helps to fight unemployment and in the process also serves to alleviate poverty, crime and disease. In addition, consumers get an assurance of quality because only quality products carry the logo (mark of quality). The Proudly South African logo identifies companies/organisations that are members of the campaign or have been accredited by the campaign. Active members may only use the Proudly South African mark of quality to ensure that it maintains its integrity.



The Department of Trade and Industry provides leadership on trade policy, and released the trade policy and strategy framework, which Cabinet adopted in July 2010.

The framework aims to promote the development of higher value-added, labour-absorbing production.

To complement this framework, the department has also developed strategies for export development and promotion, as well as investment promotion and facilitation.

A single integrated facilitation centre has been created to deal with investors and exporters.

The department has a network of foreign economic offices abroad to facilitate business on behalf of South African companies.

The department assists exporters by providing information, financial support and practical assistance to sustain growth in traditional markets and penetrate new high-growth markets, such as China, India and Russia.

Progress has been made in trade integration in the Southern African Development Community (SADC). Over the medium term, the SADC will focus on addressing rules of origin, trade facilitation and non-tariff barriers.

Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP)

The IPAP II 2011/12 to 2013/14 was launched in April 2011 as a three-year rolling industrial development road map. In terms of the interventions outlined and the requirement of intergovernmental coordination and multistakeholder involvement, IPAP was a first of its kind in South Africa. The IPAP represents a qualitative step forward in government's industrial policy efforts and achieved much progress.

Green economy

Green-economy projects in South Africa will be boosted by a R25-billion investment by the IDC over the next five years.

More environment-friendly initiatives are expected to be implemented over the next few years as the country embarks on a renewable energy drive.

The IDC is funding some of the renewable energy initiatives such as the IDC project to co-fund a solar water-heater undertaking for low-income housing. By May 2012, more than 262 000 units had been installed countrywide.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

DOING BUSINESS IN SOUTH AFRICA

The IDC's funding will help support the Department of Energy's Integrated Resource Plan (IRP). It maps out how South Africa will double its electricity supply capacity over the next 20 years.

According to the IRP, renewable energy will supply as much as 42% of the country's power in the future; nuclear, 23%; coal, 15%; with a small amount of gas and hydro making up the difference.

Government expects thousands of jobs will be created via green-economy projects in new sectors such as biotechnology, nanotechnology and prototype building technologies.

The projects are expected to play a significant role in the realisation of the New Growth Path.

Taxation

South Africa has a residence-based tax system, which means residents are – subject to certain exclusions – taxed on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned. Non-residents are, however, taxed on their income from a South African source. Foreign taxes are credited against South African tax payable on foreign income.

Most of the State's income is derived from income tax, although nearly a third of total revenue from government taxes comes from indirect taxes, primarily VAT.

Exchange control

Exchange-control regulations are administered by the South African Reserve Bank (SARB) on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The Minister of Finance has also appointed certain banks to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange, as well as authorised dealers with limited authority in foreign exchange, which gives them the right to buy and sell foreign exchange, subject to conditions and within limits prescribed by the Financial Surveillance Department (FSD) of the SARB. Authorised dealers are not agents of FSD, but act on behalf of their customers.

Since 1994, South Africa has considerably reformed its exchange-control policies. The approach has been directed at the gradual liberalisation and relaxation of exchange controls, with the intention of replacing them

with a strategy aligned to the broader macroprudential approach as part of the long-term exchange-control reform strategy.

There have been gradual exchange-control reforms concerning individuals, corporates and institutional investors. The liberalisation has been focused on progressively increasing the individual foreign capital allowance, increasing institutional investors' foreign exposure and allowing South African firms to raise capital and expand their operations offshore from a domestic base.

Banking industry

As at the end of December 2010, 33 banking institutions – 12 locally controlled, six foreign-controlled, 13 registered branches and two mutual banks – were reporting data to the Bank Supervision Department of the Reserve Bank. There were also 41 international banks with authorised representative offices in South Africa. The banking industry is characterised by a high degree of concentration, with four banks, ABSA Bank Ltd, The Standard Bank of South Africa Ltd, FirstRand Bank Ltd and Nedbank Ltd, dominating the sector.

JSE Limited

As South Africa's only full-service securities exchange, the JSE Ltd connects buyers and sellers in different markets such as equities, which include a primary and secondary board; equity derivatives; agricultural derivatives; and interest-rate instruments. The JSE Ltd is one of the top 20 exchanges in the world in terms of market capitalisation.

The JSE Ltd is the market of choice for local and international investors looking to gain exposure to the leading capital markets in South Africa and the broader African continent. The JSE Ltd also provides companies with the opportunity to raise capital in a highly regulated environment through its markets: the Main Board and AltX, the Alternative Exchange. A respected brand associated with high market integrity, the JSE Ltd is regarded as a mature, efficient, secure market with world-class regulation, trading, clearing, settlement assurance and risk management.



MEDUPI BOILER
HYDROSTATIC PRESSURE
8 JUNE 2011



POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



**INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS
AND COOPERATION**

In 2011, the Department of International Relations and Cooperation released the *White Paper on Building a Better World: The Diplomacy of Ubuntu*. South Africa is a multifaceted, multicultural and multiracial country that embraces the concept of Ubuntu to define who people are and how they relate to others. The philosophy of Ubuntu means “humanity” and is reflected in the idea that South Africans affirm their humanity when they affirm the humanity of others.

South Africa has risen to the challenge and plays a meaningful role in the region, on the continent and in the world.

South Africa’s unique approach to global issues has found expression in the concept of Ubuntu. These concepts inform the country’s particular approach to diplomacy.

This philosophy translates into an approach to international relations that respects all nations, peoples and cultures. It recognises that it is in South Africa’s national interest to promote and support the positive development of others.

South Africa therefore accords central importance to:

- its immediate African neighbourhood and continent
- working with countries of the South to address shared challenges of underdevelopment
- promoting global equity and social justice
- working with countries of the North to develop a true and effective partnership for a better world
- doing its part to strengthen the multilateral system, including its transformation, to reflect the diversity of nations, and ensure its centrality in global governance.

South Africa and Africa

South Africa has always regarded Africa as the centrepiece of its foreign policy, and is mobilising a significant amount of resources towards the socio-economic awakening of the continent, peace-making and peace-building, as well as post-conflict reconstruction and development.

African Union (AU)

The AU is Africa’s premier institution and principal organisation for promoting the continent’s accelerated socio-economic integration, which will lead to greater unity and solidarity between African countries and peoples. South Africa was instrumental in establishing the AU and its organs, which are the:

In November and December 2011, the 17th Congress of the Parties of the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change was held in Durban. The Department of International Relations and Cooperation hosted the event on behalf of the country, with the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, as president of the summit.



- Assembly
- Executive Council
- specialised technical committees
- financial institutions
- Permanent Representatives Committee
- Peace and Security Council (PSC)
- Pan-African Parliament
- Economic, Social and Cultural Council
- Court of Justice
- African Court on Human and People's Rights
- African Commission on Human and People's Rights.

The financial institutions, the African Central Bank and African Monetary Fund, and the African Court of Justice still have to be operationalised.

The AU has made notable progress towards the political and economic integration of the continent:

- the AU has developed the PSC, which is responsible for resolving conflicts, peacekeeping and post-conflict reconstruction in conjunction with the United Nations (UN)
- a common defence policy has been adopted, which includes the Standby Force, with a nucleus of five brigades, one from each region
- the Human and Peoples' Rights Court has been established
- the Protocol on the Rights of Women in Africa and the Declaration on Gender Equality is being implemented
- the Protocol on the Court of Justice is underway.

South Africa has been active in efforts to bring about peace and stability on the continent. The country has engaged in peacekeeping operations and peace-building measures in support of the African Agenda, and has played an important mediation and/or facilitation role in countries such as Burundi, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Sudan, Ethiopia-Eritrea, Côte d'Ivoire, Madagascar and Zimbabwe.

South Africa has also helped some countries on the continent to set up institutions, such as the Independent Electoral Commission, while participating in election-observation

missions, establishing functional civil services and using South Africa's experience in post-conflict and reconstruction and development programmes.

New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

South Africa played a role in the establishment of Nepad and the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM) and hosted the secretariats of these two bodies. Nepad, as a blueprint for Africa's socio-economic development, represents the incarnation of the objectives of the AU at a practical level to intensify the struggle against poverty and underdevelopment.

Nepad remains the main frame of reference for intra-African relations and Africa's partnerships with international entities such as the European Union (EU)-AU Strategic Partnership, Forum for Africa China Partnership, the G8, New Africa Asia Strategic Partnership (NAASP) and the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development.

The primary objectives of Nepad are to eradicate poverty, halt the marginalisation of Africa in the globalisation process, promote the empowerment and economic integration of women and achieve the millennium development goals.

The underlying principles of Nepad are:

- **Accountability:** Nepad recognises the importance of good political, economic and corporate governance in creating the conditions for development, with African governments embracing greater accountability to their constituents. Nepad also seeks to base Africa's partnership with the North on mutual accountability.
- **Ownership:** Nepad is a long-term vision that is African-led and -owned. Ownership should be promoted through broad and deep participation by all sectors of society, and by tapping into indigenous knowledge/expertise to define needs and solutions.
- **Partnership:** While Nepad is a partnership between and among Africans, it seeks to accelerate sustainable development in Africa through partnerships with the South, and to forge a new partnership with the developed North that changes the unequal relationship with Africa.

One of the outflows of Nepad was the introduction of the APRM, accepted by member states of the AU as an African self-monitoring mechanism in 2003.

By April 2011, 30 African countries had acceded to the APRM and 14 had been peer-reviewed.

South Africa and the Southern African Development Community (SADC)

The SADC has been in existence since 1980, when it was formed as a loose alliance of nine majority-ruled states in southern Africa known as the Southern African Development Coordination Conference, with the main aim of coordinating development projects to lessen economic dependence on the then apartheid South Africa.

The founding member states are: Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

As a community of nations, the SADC has had to work together in confronting various challenges of political and socio-economic nature.

The Free Trade Agreement, which was launched in 2008, is part of the SADC's ongoing efforts to create strong relations with southern African countries through trade. The SADC also aims to create a regional customs union.

In August 2011, President Jacob Zuma was elected as chairperson of the SADC Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Troika.

Asia and Australasia

South Africa and Indonesia were instrumental in the launch of the NAASP in Bandung in 2005 on the 50th anniversary of the Bandung Conference, which cemented Afro-Asian solidarity. NAASP represents a commitment by heads of state and government to help build closer economic ties between Africa and Asia.

The second Southern African Development Community-Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa-East African Community Tripartite Heads of State and Government Summit was held in South Africa at the end of June 2011.

The summit officially launched the Tripartite Free Trade Agreement (FTA) negotiations. The three pillars of the FTA are market integration, infrastructure development and industrial development.

The summit also resolved to address the challenges associated with facilitating the movement of businesspeople across regional economic communities, together with infrastructure development.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS AND COOPERATION

South Africa continues to strengthen its relations with the region through increased two-way trade; personal exchanges between high-level dignitaries; and the finalisation of new instruments of cooperation in the science and technology fields, through technology transfer, investments and overseas development assistance (ODA) in capacity-building.

While Japan, Malaysia and Taiwan already rank among the foremost sources of foreign direct investment in South Africa, the significance of China and India as sources of investment, is growing. South Africa's multinational companies are finding attractive investment opportunities in Australia, China, Indonesia and Thailand in diverse fields such as mining, minerals processing, electronic media and the petrochemical industry.

December 2011 marked 14 years since the official establishment of diplomatic relations between South Africa and China. The South Africa-China bilateral relationship is one of the most dynamic partnerships of its kind. China is South Africa's largest trading partner.

South Africa also plays a leading role in the Indian Ocean Rim Association for Regional Cooperation, which creates an opportunity for countries of the South to serve their economic interests.

Apart from strengthening trilateral cooperation, India, Brazil, South Africa (IBSA) countries are committed to collective efforts to reform the UN Security Council, as well

Highlights on the international scene in 2011 included:

- election by acclamation to the United Nations (UN) Security Council
- admission to the most powerful bloc of emerging markets: Brazil, Russia, India and China
- leadership of the infrastructure-development initiative within the framework of the New Partnership for Africa's Development
- assumption of the chairpersonship of the Southern African Development Community (SADC) Organ on Politics, Defence and Security
- hosting the SADC-East African Economic Community-Common Economic Community of East and Southern Africa
- hosting the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change 17th Conference of the Parties and Seventh Session of the Conference of the Parties serving as the meeting of the parties to the Kyoto Protocol Summit in Durban
- hosting the India, Brazil, South Africa Summit.



In April 2011, President Jacob Zuma led a South African delegation to the third Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) Leaders Meeting held in the Hainan Province of the People's Republic of China. The theme of the summit was *Broad Vision, Shared Prosperity*.



South Africa attended the meeting as the newest member of BRICS, with objectives to:

- consolidate South Africa's BRICS membership and commit to its processes and related mechanisms
- identify and leverage opportunities for South Africa's developmental agenda
- enhance the African Agenda and sustainable development
- promote broad cooperation in the multilateral arena
- work for cooperation with other emerging market economies.

At the end of the summit, a joint declaration was signed, which captures the central essence of what this evolving formation is committed to and seeks to achieve.

as the international financial architecture and to take joint steps to mitigate the effects of the global financial crisis. The three countries have also agreed to redouble their efforts to promote transport interconnectivity by adopting cooperative maritime and aviation frameworks that will assist in facilitating the new intra-IBSA trade target of US\$25 billion by 2015.

South Africa's trade with its IBSA partners has increased significantly since the forum's inception. South Africa's trade statistics for the period 2007 to 2010 showed an increase in overall trade from R36,92 billion in 2007 to R58,133 billion in 2010.

South Africa enjoys wide-ranging multilateral relations with Australia and New Zealand.

The Middle East

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation distinguishes between two clearly identifiable subregions in the Middle East. There is the Levant, which comprises Israel, Iraq, Jordan, Lebanon, Palestine and Syria, and the Arabian/Persian Gulf Region, consisting of the member states of the Gulf Cooperation Council, namely Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates (UAE), Iran and Yemen.

The Middle East is an important economic region as it occupies a unique geopolitical position in the tricontinental hub of Europe, Asia and Africa.

South Africa's leading trade partners in the region are Saudi Arabia, Iran, Kuwait, Qatar, Israel and the UAE.

South Africa supports a just, equitable and comprehensive peace process in the Middle East and an end to the illegal occupation of land that has led to conflict and violence between the peoples of the region.

The Americas

The overall bilateral relationship with the United States of America (USA) remains strong, with cooperation expanding on matters of common interest and mutual benefit.

One of the highlights in South African-US relations is that the USA has identified with South Africa's strategic priorities and is making an effort to align its programmes and projects with these.

In June 2011, the First Lady of the USA, Mrs Michelle Obama, visited South Africa. During her stay, she, among other things, delivered a keynote address to the Young African Women Leaders Forum, and visited former President Nelson Mandela and Robben Island.

In September 2011, President Zuma concluded a working visit to the USA, where he led the South African delegation to the 66th Session of the UN General Assembly in New York, and also promoted economic and educational ties with the USA. He visited the New York Stock Exchange, and ended his stay with a stop-over in Houston, Texas, where he met with the business community to promote trade and investments, as well as education.

Relations between South Africa and Canada are conducted largely within the framework of the Annual Consultations (AC). This is the primary forum in which issues of mutual interest and concern receive specific focus.

The growth in regular high-level visits in both directions serves to cement and expand the mutually beneficial interaction in all spheres.

Canada's ODA to South Africa under the Country Development Programming Framework has three main programme themes, namely strengthening South Africa's service-delivery mechanism; regional cooperation; and mainstreaming (gender, HIV, AIDS and environment). For the period 2008 to 2013, the amount of Canadian ODA to South Africa amounts to R250 million.

Bilateral relations with Latin America and the Caribbean will continue advancing the development agenda of the South and strengthening cooperation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the South at regional, interregional and multilateral levels.

The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean and Latin America.

The majority of the people of the Caribbean are of African descent and thus have strong historical and cultural links with the continent of Africa. South Africa's endeavours, in conjunction with the AU, to strengthen cooperation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean, have added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations.

Europe

South Africa's exports to the EU are growing and their composition is becoming more diverse. South Africa is gradually moving from mainly commodity-based products to a more diversified export profile that includes manufactured products.

The fifth South Africa-EU Summit will be held in Brussels in 2012. The fourth South Africa-EU Summit took place in September 2011 in the Kruger National Park, Mpumalanga. The summit reviewed the rapid expansion of the bilateral relationship between South Africa and the EU, manifested by a strengthened strategic partnership and growing cooperation in a number of areas. In its assessment of the implementation of the joint action plan, the summit welcomed positive developments such as the:

- effective implementation and increased ownership of the EU's development assistance programme for South Africa and the excellent relationship between the European Investment Bank and its South African partners
- launch in September 2011 of the Primary Healthcare Programme, worth €126 million, aimed at increasing life

China became South Africa's top export destination at the end of 2010. China's customs statistics show that trade between China and South Africa totalled US\$25,6 billion throughout 2010. Imports from South Africa reached US\$14,8 billion during the same period.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS AND COOPERATION

expectancy, reducing maternal and child mortality and supporting the fight against HIV, AIDS and tuberculosis

- successful cooperation in the areas of science, technology and innovation, and supporting seminars on minerals, mining and climate-change research, as well as on the environment and sustainable development, including green growth, climate action and biodiversity
- consistent progress in space cooperation, also involving the South African National Space Agency and the European Space Agency, especially the advanced preparations for the extension to South Africa of the European Geographic Navigation Overlay System, which will significantly enhance global navigation satellite system services in South Africa.

Germany has made substantial new investments in the South African economy since 1994 and remains one of the country's most important trading partners.

In July 2011, President Zuma received the United Kingdom (UK) Prime Minister, Mr David Cameron, on a working visit, which took place within the context of deepening, strengthening and broadening further the strong relations between the two countries. The visit to South Africa followed a successful state visit by President Zuma to the UK in 2010; the subsequent South Africa-UK Bilateral Forum; and the eventual adoption of the strategy of cooperation between the two countries.

The Prince of Wales, Prince Charles, and the Duchess of Cornwall, Camilla Rosemary, visited South Africa in November 2011.

In October 2010, South Africa won a non-permanent seat on the United Nations Security Council (UNSC) for the second time for 2011/12. The country served on the UNSC in 2007/08.



The United Nations General Assembly also elected Germany, India and Colombia to two-year seats on the council, commencing 1 January 2011.

Each non-permanent country sits on the council for two years alongside the permanent powers – Britain, China, France, Russia and the United States of America – which have the right to veto any council resolution.

South Africa will be guided by its commitment to multilateralism, advancement of the African Agenda and the peaceful resolution of conflict.

South Africa and France cooperate in various multilateral forums, particularly to improve peace and security on the African continent and support the advancement of global governance. President Zuma paid a state visit to France in March 2011.

In 2011, South Africa and Russia further strengthened bilateral political and economic relations. Delegations from the two countries met for the 10th session of the South Africa-Russian Federation Joint Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation in Pretoria in September 2011.

United Nations

The UN occupies the central and indispensable role within the global system of governance. South Africa looks to the UN to advance the global development agenda and address underdevelopment and the eradication of poverty globally. Through participation in multilateral forums, South Africa also upholds the belief that the resolution of international conflicts should be peaceful and in accordance with the centrality of the UN Charter and the principles of international law.

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation continues engaging in the ongoing debates and negotiations to advance reform.

United Nations Development Programme (UNDP)

The UNDP has an office in Pretoria, which is headed by the resident representative, who is also the resident UN coordinator for all UN operational activities for development in South Africa.

Commonwealth

The Commonwealth comprises 53 member countries on every continent and major ocean, making up a quarter of the world's population and generating 20% of global trade.

Members range from micro-states in Polynesia to members of the G8, from the smallest and poorest to the richest and most populous, with cross-cutting affiliations straddling the North-South divide.

The Commonwealth is united by its shared ideals and common traditions manifested in similar structures of governance; public administration and law; and a common working

language, commercial and business practices, and understanding. It is an important multilateral institution, both uniting and serving its member countries and providing a lobby on global issues.

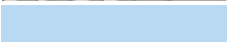
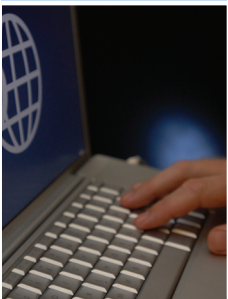
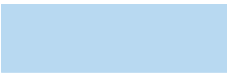
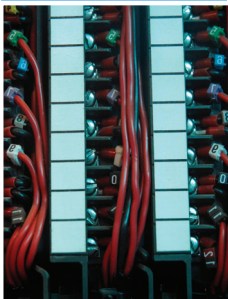
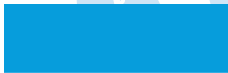
Its programmes of action, such as the Commonwealth Fund for Technical Cooperation, the Commonwealth Youth Programme and the Commonwealth Foundation, are focused on capacity-building, economic and social development, the removal of disparities in living standards across the world and the alleviation of poverty and illiteracy.

Non-Aligned Movement (NAM)

The 114-member strong NAM is the largest political grouping of countries outside of the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

South Africa formally joined the movement in 1994 and has played a leading role ever since.

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



COMMUNICATIONS

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

COMMUNICATIONS

Between 2007 and 2010, the information and communications technology (ICT) market grew by over R131 billion to R179 billion. It was estimated that the sector would grow to R187 billion in 2011, with an estimated figure of R250 billion by 2020. This growth will be driven by the rapid uptake and use of data and applications-driven mobile communications.

Access

The Department of Communications' mandate is to create a favourable ICT environment, ensuring that South Africa has the capacity to advance its socio-economic development goals and support the renewal of Africa and the building of a better world.

Broadband is an essential digital resource for accessing basic services, products, commerce and job creation. Broadband has the potential of creating opportunities and opening new markets that allow businesses to grow.

Given the strategic importance of this enabling infrastructure, the Department of Communications, together with the ICT industry, have committed to delivering 100% broadband penetration and delivering a million jobs by 2020.

During 2011/12, the Department of Communications made substantial progress towards the implementation of the Broadcasting Digital Migration Policy. In February 2012, final amendments to the policy were published in the *Government Gazette* for implementation by various role players. The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (Icasa) has commenced with the process to finalise the Digital Terrestrial Television regulations.

The South African Bureau of Standards (SABS) Standard, according to which locally manufactured set top boxes (STBs) will be built, was launched at the inaugural ICT Indaba in June 2012.

The department aims to finalise the selection process of suitable STB manufacturers in 2012. This is an important area of job creation and government expects it to create an estimated 23 500 jobs across the value chain.

ICT infrastructure is a basic foundation for economic competitiveness. During the last few years, government has increased investment in infrastructure to create jobs and stimulate the economy. Government will accelerate broadband-infrastructure spending.

The West African Cable System (WACS), the fifth submarine cable system to link South Africa to the rest of the world, was formally launched in May 2012, promising further improved bandwidth connectivity down the west coast of Africa.



WACS was initiated by the South African Government as a collaborative effort of African governments and leading telecommunications operators.

South African state company Broadband Infraco's investment in WACS entitles the company to 11,4% of the system's total capacity, which will help the country meet its target of providing broadband connectivity to all South Africans who need it by 2020.

It will also help the company to further reduce the cost of telecommunications in the country.

In this regard, an initial R450 million has been allocated, over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period to provide broadband services.

Jobs will be created across various subsectors of the industry through:

- providing broadband infrastructure
- establishing content hubs for radio and TV animation
- e-cooperatives
- using ICT in further education and training colleges
- tailor-made solutions for small, medium and micro-enterprises
- digital broadcasting and the distribution of STBs
- rolling out PostBank.

The Department of Communications has developed the ICT Rural Development Strategy, which will be implemented in the 2012/13 financial year. The strategy, over the MTEF period, focuses on establishing new access centres in the 161 priority areas across the country, as identified by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform.

The strategy also affirms government's commitment to connect all schools and health centres in the country.

During the 2012/13 financial year, government has prioritised the provision of broadband connectivity to 1 650 schools in all provinces as the initial phase of the implementation of the National Connectivity Plan for schools. This project is a result of a legacy project of the 2010 FIFA Soccer World Cup™. The broadband connectivity will enable schools to have access to the Internet, e-mails and hosting services.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

COMMUNICATIONS

A 2011 study revealed that more than half of the participants accessed the Internet on their cellphones daily.



Of the 8 000 people who were surveyed, 57% engaged in some form of banking or financial activity on their cellphones, including balance checks and the transfer of funds, while about 21% had paid a bill via their mobile service.

Eighty-nine per cent used their cellphones to research purchasing a digital or physical product.

Globally, 72% of participants used mobile Internet daily, while 18% no longer used fixed-line access to the Internet. Twenty-seven per cent of consumers said they would make purchases via their cellphone if security issues were better addressed.

Mobile communications

In recent years, South Africa has witnessed tremendous growth in the cellphone industry. Mobile penetration is estimated at more than 10%, which is one of the highest rates in the world. South Africa has five operators, namely Vodacom, MTN, Cell C, Virgin Mobile and Telkom.

Internet

Internet use in South Africa grew by 25% in the past year, according to the study by research company World Wide Worx and the howzit MSN online portal.

The 6,8 million South Africans using the Internet at the end of 2010 increased to 8,5 million by the end of 2011.

The number was projected to increase to more than 10 million people by the end of 2012. Penetration is approaching 20%.

The study showed that 7,9 million South Africans accessed the Internet via their cellphones.

Telkom

Telkom has been operating as a commercial company since October 1991 and is the largest provider of communications services in Africa, according to operating revenue and assets.

In October 2010, Telkom launched its mobile operator, 8ta. In September 2011, it launched Telkom Business Mobile, which focuses exclusively on the business market.

Postal sector

The South African Post Office delivers to an area exceeding 1,2 million km², with more than 2 400 outlets and 5 500 service

SABC News and Current Affairs is responsible for:

- 1 255 radio news bulletins in 13 languages on 18 radio stations every week
- 32 daily current affairs radio shows
- six television news bulletins broadcast daily and 10 television current affairs shows on SABC 1, SABC 2 and SABC 3 every week.



The SABC's online news service, *SABCNews.com*, attracts about 600 000 visits a month.

points. It is the largest business undertaking in the country. In 2011/12, over 1,71 million new addresses were rolled out to people in rural and underserved areas. The delivery standard attained was 96%, exceeding the target of 95% and improving on the previous year.

The media

South Africa's Bill of Rights guarantees the freedom of the press and other media.

Broadcasting

The independence of the public broadcaster, the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC), is guaranteed by legislation. The SABC is being corporatised and restructured to better fulfil its mandate.

Radio

The SABC's national radio network comprises 18 radio stations. Fifteen of these are dedicated specifically to public-service broadcasting and include 11 full-spectrum stations, one in each of the official languages of South Africa, a cultural service for the Indian community broadcasting in English, a regional community station broadcasting in isiXhosa and English, and a community station broadcasting in the !Xu and Khwe languages of the Khoisan people of the Northern Cape. The SABC boasts three stations in its commercial portfolio. They are 5fm, MetroFM and Good Hope FM.

SABC News provides news and current affairs services to both SABC radio and television. For its domestic coverage, SABC News has 13 editorial offices, while world news is provided by strategically placed news bureaus, foreign correspondents and international news agencies.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

COMMUNICATIONS

Channel Africa Network comprises four language services, reaching millions of listeners throughout Africa. Broadcasts are in English, French, Kiswahili, Portuguese, Chinyanja and Silozi. The network targets audiences in Africa and the Indian Ocean islands, and concentrates on providing programmes with African content.

Icasa has granted licences to the following private radio stations:

- Radio Algoa
- Classic FM
- Kaya FM
- YFM
- Highveld Stereo
- Radio 702
- Radio Jacaranda
- Radio Oranje
- East Coast Radio
- P4
- Cape Talk MW
- Radio KFM.

Community radio stations have a huge potential for supporting, among other things, cultural and educational information exchanges. These radio stations use all indigenous languages, ensuring that people receive information in languages they understand.

By May 2012, there were 165 registered community radio stations in South Africa.

Television

The SABC's television network comprises three television channels – all free-to-air. SABC Television reaches a weekly audience of 26,6 million adults aged 15 years and older. South African television is broadcast in all 11 official languages and in Sign Language.

In October 1998, the country's first privately owned free-to-air television channel, e.tv, started operations.

The Printing Industries Federation of South Africa (PIPSA) celebrated its 100th anniversary in 2011.

The R45-billion industry ranks sixth in South Africa, in terms of contribution to gross domestic product with more than 45 000 employees through six regional PIPSA chambers and more than 800 registered company members.



M-Net became South Africa's first private subscription-television service when it launched in 1986. Today, it broadcasts its array of general entertainment and niche channels to subscribers in more than 50 countries across the African continent and adjacent Indian Ocean islands.

MultiChoice Africa (MCA) was formed in 1995 to manage the subscriber services of its sister company, M-Net. It became the first African company on the continent to offer digital satellite broadcasting. In July 2008, Multichoice launched high-definition television, the first in Africa. MultiChoice provides digital media entertainment, content and services to multiple devices, which include pay TV subscriber services to more than 1,5 million customers.

MCA is 100% owned by the MIH Group, which is listed on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Ltd, the Nasdaq in New York and AEX in Amsterdam.

The pay-television provider Top TV was launched in 2010.

Print

Technically, the local print media rate among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, identified by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet.

South African newspapers and magazines are mainly organised into several major publishing houses: Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd, and Avusa Ltd. Other important media players include M&G Media Ltd; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd; Primedia Publishing Ltd; Ramsay, Son and Parker (Pty) Ltd; and Kagiso Media.

Since 1994, the major press groups have embarked on programmes to boost Black Economic Empowerment in media ownership.

Newspapers

In February 2012, the Audit Bureau of Circulations (ABC) of South Africa reported that total daily-newspaper circulation increased by 114 000 copies in the fourth quarter of 2011, compared with the previous quarter, mainly due to increases in free and community newspapers. Some 97 000 fewer (a

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

COMMUNICATIONS

drop of 6,7%) daily papers were sold in the fourth quarter compared with the same quarter in the previous year, while single-copy sales declined by 7% and subscriptions by 8,3%.

The total circulation of weekend newspapers declined by 4,9% (108 000 copies) compared with the fourth quarter in 2010, as did single-copy sales (by 5,8% or 96 000 copies) and subscriptions (by 1,3% or 6000 copies).

Magazines

In the fourth quarter of 2011, total magazine circulation increased from the previous quarter, mostly because of a large new custom title (*Vodacom Now!*), while consumer magazines showed growth, mainly because of new entrants.

In the consumer-magazine category, total magazine circulation increased by 1,4% while real circulation declined by 3,7% (or 233 000 copies). Both single-copy sales and subscriptions declined. Free circulation increased by 37,4%, mainly because of new free circulating titles.

Biggest weekly and daily newspapers	
July to September 2011	
Weekly papers	
<i>Sunday Times</i>	451 361
<i>Soccer Laduma</i>	345 088
<i>Rapport</i>	231 911
<i>Weekend Argus</i>	157 220
<i>Sunday Sun</i>	221 002
Daily papers	
<i>Daily Sun</i>	374 400
<i>Die Burger</i>	299 854
<i>City Press</i>	157 306
<i>Beeld</i>	153 272
<i>The Times</i>	142 024
<i>Sowetan</i>	116 347
Source: Audit Bureau of Circulations	

Above-the-line adspend in R millions

Category	2000 R'm	%	2009 R'm	%	2010 R'm	%
Daily newspapers	1 307,2	15,6	3 268,2	13,4	3 500,6	12,2
Weekend newspapers	583,3	7,0	1 573,4	6,3	1 644,3	5,7
Black/coloured/Asian papers	172,8	2,1	included in other categories			
Community newspapers	411,6	4,9	1 535,5	6,3	1 635,0	5,7
Consumer magazines	973,5	10,4	2 048,2	8,4	2 112,0	7,3
Trade, technical, financial	373,1	4,5	484,7	2,0	494,4	1,7
Total print	3 721,5	44,4	8 910,0	36,4	9 386,3	32,6
TV	2 977,1	35,5	10 487,2	42,9	13 408,3	46,6
Radio	1 224,6	14,6	3 041,0	12,4	3 687,8	12,8
Cinema	69,8	0,8	299,4	1,2	351,3	1,2
Outdoor	326,9	3,9	1 075,1	4,4	1 226,0	4,3
Direct mail (unaddressed)	not monitored		151,2	0,6	141,2	0,5
Internet	13,7+	0,2	469,3	1,9	557,4	1,9
Total	8 383,5	100	24 433,2	100	28 778,3	100

Rounding off occurs. **Important note:** 2009 revised upward from original data published in 2010 *Media Facts*. Excludes self-promotion by media.

This table reads: According to Multimedica, TV accounted for R2 977,1 million (35,5%) of the R8 383,5 million spent on the media in 2000. This rose to R10 487,2 million (42,8%) in 2009 and R13 408,3 (46,6%) in 2010.

Source: Nielsen Media Research's Multimedica, South Africa and SADC Media Facts, 2011

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12 COMMUNICATIONS

The press code governing print media was amended after its scheduled five-year review. The amended code went into effect on 15 October 2011.



Amendments to the press code include:

- sensitivity towards the dignity of a person, whether a private or public figure, with the understanding that the right to privacy can only be overridden by a legitimate public interest
- no child under 18 can be interviewed, photographed or filmed without the consent of a parent or guardian, if there is any chance coverage might cause harm of any kind; the media may also not identify children who had been victims of, were charged with, or convicted of abuse or exploitation
- journalists should use anonymous sources only if there is no other way to handle a story
- the press may not publish information that constitutes a breach of confidence, unless there is a legitimate public interest
- plagiarism is banned
- the press cannot report on the HIV and AIDS status of people without their consent.

In the family-interest category, *DRUM* showed the largest increase: 7% to 137 544 single-copy sales (138 479 total circulation in the fourth quarter of 2011, compared with 129 317 in 2010). Both *YOU* and *Huisgenoot* decreased. *YOU* had the largest 167 763 single-copy sales (172 403 total from 182 298 in 2010) while *Huisgenoot* was at 271 226 single-copy sales (283 355 from 302 677 in 2010).

News agencies

The national news agency, the South African Press Association, is a cooperative, non-profit organisation.

The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are Reuters, *Agence France-Presse*, Associated Press, *Deutsche Presse-Agentur* and United Press International.

Media diversity

The independent Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA) is jointly funded by government, the media and other donors.

Headed by a nine-member board, the MDDA works to foster diversity, particularly in community and small commercial media, and to redress imbalances in the industry.

The MDDA awarded its first grants to community and small commercial media projects in January 2004.

By mid-2011, the MDDA was providing support to more than 343 media projects across South Africa, focusing on historically disadvantaged communities, using indigenous languages. This was done with the budget allocation of R128,8 million accumulatively since 2004.

By mid-2011, the agency had trained over 1 300 people, provided 143 bursaries to different radio and print media, and created approximately 200 (direct and indirect) job opportunities and beneficiary projects, which empowered more people with skills that enabled them to participate in the broader media and broadcasting industry.

Advertising

South Africa's vibrant and dynamic advertising industry has experienced great growth in the last few years. It is a mouthpiece for the diverse mix of cultures in the country, especially when it comes to the unique South African sense of humour. While the airwaves, soundwaves and digital world are filled with advertising products of an international standard, uniquely South African references are common.

Local advertising agencies are often recognised internationally for their excellence.

Several South African agencies are active in Africa. The industry is self-regulated through the Advertising Standards Authority.



LCM-01

KATHY
REYER

NO.10123

ARROWLOW
ON AEA

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



TRANSPORT

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

TRANSPORT

Transport and its related services is a catalyst for economic growth, and direct and indirect job creation in South Africa. The provision of affordable, safe and reliable transportation of goods and people is critical to the development of the country.

Government boosted transport infrastructure spending to R66 billion in the 2011/12 financial year and is expected to raise it to R80 billion by 2013/14. The improvements are spread across the country, with urban and rural parts expected to benefit from the creation of jobs and tourism opportunities.

Over the next three years, an additional R2,5 billion will be allocated to municipalities for public-transport systems and infrastructure.

Policy and initiatives

The Road Transport Management System (RTMS) is an industry-led voluntary self-regulation scheme that encourages consignees, consignors and road transporters to implement a management system that preserves road infrastructure, improves road safety and increases productivity. The system's key components are load optimisation, driver wellness, vehicle maintenance and productivity. It is designed to show transport companies how to take greater corporate responsibility for road safety.

National Transport Master Plan (Natmap)

The Department of Transport presented Parliament with the R750-million Natmap in 2010, which includes linking Johannesburg to Durban and Polokwane via rapid-train networks.

The plan includes expanding the Port of Saldanha, doubling the Huguenot Tunnel outside Paarl and expanding the Port of Cape Town.

Part of Natmap is to form partnerships with the private sector to help fund the projects and lower the burden on taxpayers.

During 2010/11, the South African National Roads Agency Limited (Sanral) supported 1 084 black-owned small, medium and micro-enterprises. Sanral trained 15 109 people in road-building projects, of whom 4 023 were women, and created about 56 298 jobs of varying lengths across South Africa.



In April 2011, the S'hamba Sonke (Moving Together) roads infrastructure upgrade and maintenance programme was launched in Durban.



Through the S'hamba Sonke Project, locals are recruited to repair damaged secondary, district and municipal roads.

The Department of Transport has set aside R22 billion over the next three years to plug potholes on South African roads. An amount of R6,4 billion was spent on this initiative across the country in 2011/12. The programme created about 70 000 job opportunities across the country in 2011/12.

Cabinet initiated the Natmap in 2007 to develop and establish a multimodal transport system to meet South Africa's needs up to 2050.

Public Transport Strategy (2007 – 2020)

The Public Transport Strategy aims to accelerate the improvement in public transport by establishing integrated rapid public-transport networks (IRPTNs), which will introduce priority rail corridors and Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) systems in cities.

The essential feature of the Public Transport Strategy is the phased extension of mode-based vehicle recapitalisation into IRPTNs. These networks comprise an integrated package of rapid rail, BRT, taxi and metered taxi priority networks, especially in major cities. The strategy is expected to improve public-transport services for over half the country's population.

Full special needs and wheelchair access for all trunk-corridor rail- and road-vehicles will also be implemented.

Over the past six years, the department invested over R48 billion in BRT systems and more than R9 billion rolling out IRPTNs.

Electronic National Traffic Information System (eNaTIS)

In February 2011, South Africa extended the use of the eNaTIS to Namibia to help reduce car theft and cross-border crimes between the two countries.

The two countries signed a Memorandum of Understanding to formalise the agreement. Authorities from the two countries would be able to access driver and vehicle details. This would also prevent stolen vehicles being registered in both

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

TRANSPORT

countries, and drivers could be held accountable for fines issued for traffic violations across the border.

By October 2011, South Africa's vehicle population was 10 156 186, according to the eNaTIS.

Through the eNaTIS, the department is able to eliminate duplicate vehicle registration and cloning.

Public entities

The following entities report to the Minister of Transport: Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (Prasa), the South African National Roads Agency Limited (Sanral), South African Maritime Safety Authority, Cross-Border Road Transport Agency, South African Civil Aviation Authority, Road Accident Fund, Credit Card Driving Licences, Railway Safety Regulator, Road Traffic Management Corporation, Road Traffic Infringement Agency, Air Traffic and Navigation Services Company, Airports Company South Africa (Acsa) and the Ports Regulator.

Transnet Limited

Transnet is a focused freight-transport and logistics company wholly owned by the South African Government. It comprises the following operating divisions:

- Transnet Freight Rail (TFR) – the freight rail division
- Transnet Rail Engineering – the rolling stock maintenance business
- Transnet Port Terminals – manages port and cargo terminal operations in the country's leading ports
- Transnet Pipelines – the fuel and gas-pipeline business manages the storage of petroleum and gas products through its network of high-pressure, long-distance pipelines

In March 2011, OR Tambo International Airport was named the best airport in Africa at the 2011 World Airport Awards in Denmark. The awards were based on 11,38 million survey questionnaires completed by over 100 different nationalities of airline passengers in 2010/11, covering more than 240 airports across the globe.



The survey evaluates traveller experiences across 39 different airport service and product factors – from check-in, arrival and transfer through to departure at the gate.

OR Tambo International Airport was also acknowledged as one of the three most improved airports worldwide.

During Transport Month in October 2011, 6 336 unroadworthy public transport and freight vehicles were taken off the roads, with the majority (1 821) being buses, mini-buses and trucks removed in Mpumalanga. This was part of the Department of Transport's National Rolling Enforcement Plan.



More than 46 402 fines were issued to public-transport and freight drivers, and 1 460 public-transport and truck drivers arrested, including 196 for drunk driving, 25 for excessive speed, eight for reckless and/or negligent driving, 877 for overloading, 73 for false documents and 281 for other offences.

From 31 August to 30 October 2011, as part of the department's pre-December holiday traffic law-enforcement operations, 623 469 public-transport vehicles were stopped and checked; 2 207 mini-buses, 885 buses and 1 699 trucks discontinued from use for being in an unroadworthy condition; 93 945 fines issued for various public-transport offences; more than 2 653 public-transport drivers arrested, including 371 for drunk driving, 1 947 for overloading, 91 for excessive speed, 28 for reckless and/or negligent driving and 154 in connection with public-transport permits.

- Transnet National Ports Authority (TNPA) – responsible for the safe, effective and efficient economic functioning of the national port system, which it manages in a landlord capacity.

Revenue at Transnet increased to R38 billion in 2010/11.

Transnet projects that it will create over 5 000 jobs in the next five years. By June 2011, the entity employed 55 519 people and estimated that the number would increase to 61 520 by 2016. This projected increase can be directly attributed to government's New Growth Path.

Road transport

South Africa has the longest road network of any country in Africa.

Sanral is responsible for the design, construction, management and maintenance of South Africa's national road network of some 16 170 km.

The toll-road network comprises about 19% (3 120 km) of the national road grid. During 2010/11, Sanral spent R738 million of its operating costs on 1 900 km of toll roads. Over the same period, capital expenditure on toll roads to strengthen and improve roads, and to build new facilities, amounted to R7 billion.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

TRANSPORT

About 1 288 km of the tolled sections of the national road have been concessioned to private companies to develop, operate and maintain.

In 2009, Sanral awarded construction contracts worth R18 billion.

Between 2010 and 2015, R75 billion is to be used for road infrastructure, maintenance and upgrading; with an additional R3 billion budgeted for the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) access roads, all of which are attempts by government to alleviate traffic congestion.

The Department of Transport identified the lack of dedicated funding for road maintenance, poor asset management and capacity challenges in municipalities and provinces, and underinvestment in the maintenance of road infrastructure as the causes of poor road conditions. It plans to develop a ringfencing mechanism by creating a fund to source additional funding for maintenance.

The following road functions have been addressed countrywide:

- 510 988 m² road surface resealed
- 321 km road regavelled
- 182 629,69 m² blacktop patching
- 80 304 km blading.

Minibus taxis are responsible for 65% of the 2,5 billion annual passenger trips in urban areas, as well as a high percentage of rural and intercity transport.

Buses and trains account for 21% and 14% respectively of all public transport.

Bus Rapid Transit

Tshwane and Johannesburg have rolled out Phase A of the BRT system. In February 2011, the former Minister of Transport, Mr Sibusiso Ndebele, and the City of Johannesburg handed over Phase 1A Bus Operating Company of the Rea Vaya BRT system to the taxi industry shareholders.

In May 2011, Johannesburg's Rea Vaya BRT was honoured with an Encouragement Award for promoting the use of public transport in Johannesburg at the Public Transport Congress, hosted by the International Association of Public Transport in Dubai, United Arab Emirates.

Rea Vaya buses transport an average of over 30 000 people to and from work daily. The buses give residents of Soweto

The Gautrain, Africa's only high-speed train, became fully operational between Pretoria and Johannesburg in August 2011.



The Gautrain's first leg, a link between Sandton and OR Tambo International Airport, opened in June 2010, three days before the city hosted the opening match of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

This landmark initiative is supported by a network of feeder buses serving most of its 10 stations.

The Gautrain can travel at speeds of 160 km/h, enabling commuters to make the trip from Johannesburg to Pretoria in less than 40 minutes.

and the southern parts of Johannesburg direct access to the inner city and surrounding areas. The buses run at regular intervals on dedicated lanes, combating traffic congestion and improving the quality of public transport.

In 2012/13, R5 billion was allocated to the BRT programme.

Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa

Prasa was formed when the operations, personnel and assets of the South African Rail Commuter Corporation, Metrorail, Intersite Property Management Services, Shosholoza Meyl and long-distance bus service, Autopax, merged.

Over the past five years, Prasa has invested over R40 billion in passenger rail infrastructure and services in South Africa. This involved R23 billion in the Gautrain Project and almost R13 billion on rehabilitating Prasa coaches and signalling systems.

Prasa transported 476 million passengers in 2010/11, excluding passengers during the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. Of these passengers, 99,1% used commuter rail, 0,3% Shosholoza Meyl and 0,6% Autopax long-distance buses.

It used a commuter fleet of 4 589 motor and trailer coaches, 124 locomotives and 1 214 long-distance rail coaches, and

In April 2012, the Minister of Transport formally invited manufacturers of rolling stock in South Africa, and all over the world, to submit their bids to win the right to build 7 224 metro coaches, estimated at R123 billion. These are modern trains that will be built in South Africa with the aim of revitalising the country's rail engineering industry, promoting local manufacturing, creating an estimated 65 000 jobs and developing a new generation of railway workers, in the form of engineers and artisans.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

TRANSPORT

Three South African women have set the standard in Africa by becoming the first black female marine pilots on the continent to gain open licences, enabling them to navigate ships of all sizes and types into local waters.



Precious Dube, Bongiwe Mbambo and Pinky Zungu, who are three of only five female marine pilots in South Africa, are tasked with guiding ships through dangerous or congested waters, such as harbours.

The marine pilot acts as an adviser to the captain, who maintains legal, overriding command of the vessel.

The three women are products of Transnet's National Ports Authority development scheme, which has been encouraging more equitable participation in the maritime sector since the 1990s. Transnet offers aspirant students bursaries to complete a national diploma in maritime studies – specialising in navigation, and a national diploma in marine mechanical engineering. These courses can be taken at the Cape Peninsula and Durban universities of technology.

570 long-distance passenger buses with 15 247 employees across 489 commuter stations and 71 long-haul stations in South Africa.

Transnet Freight Rail

TFR, the largest operating division of Transnet, has as its primary purpose the transportation of rail freight. Core freight activities account for about 95% of its revenue.

Transnet Ltd, operating and controlling South Africa's major transport infrastructure, is also responsible for ensuring that the country's transport industries operate according to world-class standards. Forming an integral part of the southern African economy, Transnet:

- moves 17% of the nation's freight annually
- exports 100% of the country's coal
- exports 100% of the iron ore
- has annual revenues of over R14 billion
- will, over the next five years, invest R35 billion in capital
- has 25 347 employees systemwide.

The company maintains an extensive rail network across South Africa that connects with other rail networks in the sub-Saharan region, with its rail infrastructure representing about 80% of Africa's total.

The number of passengers accommodated at national airports grew from 16,8 million in 2008/09 to 18,3 million in 2011/12, at an average annual rate of 3%, and is expected to grow to 23 million in 2014/15 at a rate of 7,7%. The number of aircraft landing at airports throughout South Africa increased from 279 515 in 2008/09 to 290 648 in 2011/12, at an average annual rate of 1% and is expected to increase to 340 285 in 2014/15, growing at an average annual rate of 5,7%.



Civil aviation

Airports Company of South Africa

Acsa owns and operates the nine principal airports, including the three major international airports in Johannesburg, Cape Town and Durban. The others are domestic airports in Bloemfontein, Port Elizabeth, East London, George, Kimberley, and Upington.

Other airports in South Africa include Lanseria (Midrand), Gateway (Polokwane), Nelspruit and Kruger (Mpumalanga).

The airports handle over 98% of the country's commercial air traffic.

South African Airways (SAA)

SAA is the largest air carrier in Africa, with OR Tambo International Airport being on the busiest routes in Africa. Nearly 75% of air-traffic activity in Africa takes place in the region.

South Africa has a number of airlines flying between its major cities, and to some of its smaller ones, with fares ranging from first-class to cut-price economy. Flights can be booked online from anywhere in the world. Eight major domestic airlines operate in the country, as well as a number of smaller charter airline companies.

Ports

The TNPA is the largest port authority on the continent. It owns and manages South Africa's ports at Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town, Saldanha and Ngqura.

The TNPA provides suitable infrastructure as a conduit for the country's imports and exports. As port landlord, it is responsible for:

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

TRANSPORT

- developing and managing port properties
- developing, advising and implementing national port policies
- providing and maintaining port infrastructure (i.e. breakwaters, seawalls, channels, basins, quay walls and jetties), and the sustainability of ports and their environments
- coordinating marketing and promotional activities for each port.

The TNPA also has a control function, which includes:

- providing vessel-traffic control and navigational aids
- licensing and leasing terminals to operators
- monitoring the performance of port operators
- ensuring the orderly, efficient and reliable transfer of cargo and passengers between sea and land.

Commercial ports play a crucial role in South Africa's transport, logistics and socio-economic development. About 98% of South Africa's exports are conveyed by sea.

The National Ports Regulator, which was established in terms of the National Ports Act, 2005, is responsible for the economic regulation of the ports system, in line with govern-

South Africa is located on a coastline of just under 3 000 km. The country has jurisdiction over about one million square kilometres of economic exclusive zone, and a search-and-rescue responsibility spanning a 27-million square kilometres zone, covering a vast sea room up to the polar continent of the Antarctic, including a part of the Southern Ocean. A major part of world trade depends on South Africa's coastal waters. The country is situated on a major sea route, which facilitates the safe and secure movement of about 500 million tons of crude petrochemical sea trade. This represents over 30% of the world's petrochemical production.



The country's ports handle over 430 metric tons of varied cargo types, carried on over 9 000 ship calls each year. In addition, thousands of merchant ships, fishing and commercial vessels and hundreds of special platforms transit or visit South Africa's ports every year.

South Africa's Centre for Sea Watch and Response, which houses the Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre and the Standby Salvage Tug Programme, responds to over 40 marine incidents a month, with the standby tug assisting hundreds of transiting ships in distress annually, some incidents occurring far out in the polar Antarctic region.

ment's strategic objectives to promote equity of access to ports and to monitor the activities of the TNPA. The regulator also promotes regulated competition, hears appeals and complaints and investigates such complaints.

The adoption and implementation of measures to enhance maritime security have resulted in South Africa being fully compliant with the International Ships and Ports Security Code since July 2004.



POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES

About 12% of the country's surface area can be used for crop production. High-potential arable land comprises only 22% of total arable land. Some 1,3 million hectares (ha) are under irrigation.

Agricultural activities range from intensive crop production and mixed farming to cattle ranching in the bushveld, and sheep farming in the more arid regions.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is responsible for production and resource management; agricultural support services; trade and economic development; food safety and biosecurity; forestry; and marine aquaculture.

Economic contribution

Primary agriculture contributes about 3% to South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP) and about 7% to formal employment. However, there are strong linkages into the economy, so that the agro-industrial sector comprises about 12% of GDP.

For the past five years, agricultural exports have contributed on average about 6,5% of total South African exports. Exports increased from 5% (1988) to 46% (2009) of agricultural production.

The largest export groups are wine, citrus, maize, grapes, sugar, apples, pears and quinces. Other important export products are undermatured ethyl alcohol, avocados, pineapples, dates, preserved fruit and nuts, as well as hides and skins.

Production

Producer prices of agricultural products decreased on average by 1,7% from 2009 to 2010. The weighted average price of field crops dropped by 6,2%. This was mainly the result of lower prices received for summer grains, dry beans and cotton. However, prices of vegetables, fruit and viticultural products increased by 42,3%, 6,8% and 1,8% respectively.

Summer grains, dry beans and hay decreased by 18,6%, 8,9% and 1,4% respectively. Prices of sugar cane, tobacco, oilseeds and winter grains increased by 15,1%, 10,9%, 3,6% and 1,4% respectively.

The demand for meat remained strong and meat prices increased between 8% and 15%.

Gross value of agricultural production, 2010 (million)	
Field crops	
Maize	13 522
Wheat	3 191
Hay	3 116
Grain sorghum	314
Sugar cane	4 825
Groundnuts	453
Tobacco	346
Sunflower seed	1 504
Soya beans	1 431
Other	1 353
Total	30 055
Horticulture	
Viticulture	3 474
Citrus fruit	6 455
Subtropical fruit	2 088
Deciduous and other fruit	8 757
Vegetables	7 802
Potatoes	4 775
Other	2 172
Total	35 523
Animal products	
Wool	1 424
Poultry and poultry products	29 598
Cattle and cattle products	15 203
Sheep and goats slaughtered	3 677
Pigs slaughtered	2 924
Milk	9 253
Other	3 442
Total	65 521
Grand total	131 099
Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries	

In September 2011, South Africa hosted the African Ministerial Conference on Agriculture. The conference aimed to share experiences and develop a common understanding among African ministers of agriculture of climate-smart agriculture.



Field crops and horticulture

The largest area of farmland planted with field crops is maize, followed by wheat and, to a lesser extent, sugar cane and sunflower seed. The grain industry is one of the largest in South Africa and is a very strategic one. According to the *Economic Review of South African Agriculture*, the gross income from field crops decreased by 14,1% to R27 617 million for the year ended 31 December 2009.

- Maize is the largest locally produced field crop, and the most important source of carbohydrates in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) for animal and human consumption. South Africa is the main maize producer in the SADC region, with an average production of about 9,7 million tons (mt) a year over the past 10 years. It is estimated that more than 8 000 commercial maize producers are responsible for the major part of the South African crop, while the rest is produced by thousands of small-scale producers. Maize is produced mainly in North West, the Free State and Mpumalanga. A total of 13,4 Mt of maize were produced in 2009/10 on 3,3 million ha of land (non-commercial agriculture included).
- Wheat is produced mainly in the winter-rainfall areas of the Western Cape and the eastern parts of the Free State. In 2010, 1,52 Mt were produced on 558 000 ha of land.
- South Africa is the world's 12th-largest producer of sunflower seed, which is produced in the Free State, North West, on the Mpumalanga Highveld and in Limpopo. An area of 397 700 ha was planted in 2009/10, producing 509 000 t.
- The cane-growing sector comprises approximately 35 300 registered sugar-cane growers farming predominantly in KwaZulu-Natal, with a substantial investment in Mpumalanga and some farming operations in the Eastern Cape. Sugar is manufactured by six milling companies with 14 sugar mills operating in these cane-growing regions.
- South Africa is the leading exporter of protea cut flowers, which account for more than half of proteas sold on the world market.

Some other crops

- Deciduous fruit is grown mainly in the Western Cape and in the Langkloof Valley in the Eastern Cape. Smaller produc-

Production of important field crops and horticultural products, 2010 ('000 t)

Maize	13 431
Wheat	1 967
Sugar cane	16 866
Grain sorghum	226
Soya beans	566
Sunflower seed	509
Deciduous and other soft fruit	1 826
Citrus fruit	2 167
Subtropical fruit	670
Vegetables	2 506
Potatoes	2 089

Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

tion areas are found along the Orange River and in the Free State, Mpumalanga and Gauteng. In 2010, South Africa produced 656 884 t of subtropical fruit, which were 642 t more than in 2009.

- Citrus production is largely limited to irrigation areas and takes place in Limpopo (16 255 ha), Mpumalanga (11 681 ha), Eastern Cape (12 923 ha), KwaZulu-Natal (4 004 ha), Western Cape (9 524 ha) and Northern Cape (639 ha). Pineapples are grown in the Eastern Cape and in northern KwaZulu-Natal. Other subtropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas, and macadamia and pecan nuts are produced mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo, and in the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.
- The 2011 overall wine-grape crop size was estimated at 1 279 017 t according to the South African Wine Industry Information and Systems. This was 1,4% more than the 2010 crop. With the exception of the Orange River, Breede Kloof and Worcester, all nine cultivation districts were expected to have bigger crops. The 2011 crop – including juice and concentrate for non-alcoholic purposes, and wine for brandy and distilling wine – was expected to amount to 992,5 million litres, calculated at an average recovery of

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES

About 8,5 million people depend directly or indirectly on agriculture for their employment and income.



Guided by government's New Growth Path (NGP), the agricultural sector has been identified as one of the sectors that has significant potential to create jobs. The NGP targets job opportunities for 300 000 households in agriculture smallholder schemes, and a further 145 000 jobs in agroprocessing, which in turn will have the potential to upgrade conditions for 660 000 farm workers by 2020.

The department is committed to creating 130 000 jobs in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors by 2014.

776 litres per ton of grapes. This was 1% more than the 2010 wine crop.

Livestock

Nearly 80% of agricultural land in South Africa is mainly suitable for extensive livestock farming. Livestock are also kept in other areas, usually in combination with other farming enterprises. Numbers vary according to weather conditions. Stockbreeders concentrate mainly on developing breeds that are well adapted to diverse weather and environmental conditions. The livestock sector contributes up to 49% of agricultural output. South Africa generally produces 85% of its meat requirements, while the remaining 15% is imported from Namibia, Botswana, Swaziland, Australia, New Zealand and Europe. The livestock industry is the largest national agricultural sector.

The South African dairy industry is important to the job market, with over 4 000 milk producers employing 60 000 farm workers and providing 40 000 people with indirect jobs within the value chain such as milk processing.

Support to smallholder farmers

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries aims to increase its support to new and existing smallholder farmers, working in close collaboration with the provinces to achieve its targets.

In the 2011/12 financial year, 15 000 smallholder farmers were targeted, including support provided to small-scale foresters and fishers.

A grant of over R1 billion was allocated to the nine provinces. By June 2011, the provinces had received the initial 10% of

Government has embarked on a mechanisation strategy aimed at stimulating production by smallholders, with a special focus on rural areas and the former homelands.



By August 2011, the initial 85 tractors had been increased to 272 and were used in 40 projects to till 12 835 ha of land, benefiting 1 608 people in Mpumalanga.

In KwaZulu-Natal, the 85 tractors were increased to 190 and were used by nearly 200 traditional leaders to service over 9 000 ha.

In Mpumalanga, a fleet of tractors is part of the Masibuyele Emasimini Programme, while in KwaZulu-Natal the State owns and manages a fleet of tractors and employs and trains the tractor drivers.

their allocation, which was followed by a further 20% in the next month, and the remaining allocations in October 2011 and January 2012.

The Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme has been reprioritised to respond timeously to the demands of the Land and Agrarian Reform Project (LARP). The LARP is aimed at accelerating and aligning land and agrarian reform in South Africa.

Climate change

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is a major role player in climate-change activities within the agricultural sector. The department has several climate change-related policies and programmes. These are in addition to the Disaster Management Act, 2002 and the National Disaster Management Framework, 2005, which address agricultural risk management and climate change. The department's climate-change programmes and policies are aligned with South Africa's National Climate-Change Response Policy. The Climate Change Sector Plan for Agriculture (Working Paper, April 2008) outlines measures of addressing agricultural sector challenges, namely creating awareness of climate change and the effects of climate change; improving knowledge on climate change; increasing capacity to respond to climate-change impacts; research; and funding research projects.

Forestry

The forestry industry is one of the strategic economic sectors in South Africa with a significant contribution towards economic growth and job creation.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES

In terms of land use, the area under forestry totals about 1,275 million ha or approximately 1% of the total South African land area of 122,3 million ha. The forestry sector (forestry and forest products) contributes 1,20% to GDP. In terms of regional GDP, forestry contributes 4,5% in KwaZulu-Natal; 4,7% in Mpumalanga; 0,9% in the Eastern Cape; and about 0,5% in Limpopo. The value of exported forest products increased from R9,5 billion in 2001 to R13,4 billion in 2010.

The forestry sector employed around 201 025 people in 2009.

That year, the total investment in the forestry industry amounted to R24,8 billion. This comprised 58,5% in trees; 19,4% in land; 13% in roads; 6,2% in fixed assets; and 2,8% in moveable assets. Regarding investment in the forest-product sector by type of processing plant for 2009, the total book value of investments amounted to R15,7 billion. This investment comprised 82,7% in pulp and board plants; 11,8% in sawmills and veneer plants; 1% in pole plants; 0,3% in mining timber; and 4,2% in other plants. The industry was a net exporter of almost R3,9 billion worth of goods in 2010, of which more than 99% took the form of converted value-added products. The forest-product industry ranks among the top exporting industries in the country, having contributed 2,27% to total exports and 1,61% to total imports in 2010. Capital investment in the industry amounted to an estimated R45 billion in 2010.

Indigenous forests

There are about 530 000 ha of indigenous or natural forests in the country, which occur mainly along the southern and

South Africa has 183 primary wood-processing plants, 180 of which are owned by the private sector and three of which are owned by local and state authorities. Of these, 102 are sawmills; 13 are mining-timber sawmills; 44 are pole-treating plants; 19 are pulp, paper and board mills; one is a match factory; and four are charcoal plants.



The total roundwood intake into these processing plants in 2008 was 19,6 million m³, valued at R6 billion. The value of sales of timber products produced by these primary processing plants totalled R21,4 billion. Some R15,8 billion was invested in primary roundwood-processing plants (at book value). At market value, this increased to an estimated R40 billion.

Champion trees, protected under the National Forests Act, 1998, are proclaimed every year in the *Government Gazette*. These are individual trees and groups of trees (shortlisted by a panel of experts) considered to be of national conservation importance. Among the listed trees are the:



- Tsitsikamma Big Tree along the Garden Route
- Post Office Milkwood Tree of Mossel Bay
- Sagole Baobab in Limpopo (one of the largest trees in South Africa).

By May 2011, 56 trees and groups of trees had been declared protected as champion trees.

The oldest planted tree is a saffron pear, brought from the Netherlands and planted in the Company's Garden in Cape Town more than three centuries ago.

Historic trees include a poplar tree, which served as a landmark for refugees during the apartheid regime who found a safe haven in the Johannesburg house of Ruth Fischer (daughter of Bram Fischer, who was a founder member of the South African Communist Party).

The Champion Tree Project of South Africa is the only one of its kind in Africa.

eastern escarpment, the coastal belt and in sheltered kloofs or ravines.

There has been an increase in the use of natural forests as sources of medicine, building material, fuel wood and food. It is estimated that around 80% of South Africa's population still uses medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural habitats.

By mid-2009, the private sector owned 1 058 908 ha (or 83%) of the total plantation area of 1 274 869 ha, and virtually all the processing plants in the country.

The remaining 17% (215 961 ha) was under public ownership, although this figure included Komatland Forests (KLF), the remaining South African Forestry Company (Ltd) package. The extent of public ownership has decreased significantly in recent years because of restructuring.

In 2009, capital investment in these plantations stood at R24,8 billion, 59% of which was attributable to investment in trees. A further 19% was tied up in land, 13% in roads, 6% in fixed assets and 3% in machinery and equipment.

Fisheries

The South African coastline covers more than 3 200 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa. South Africa's

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES

In August 2011, a Sydney gum tree (*Eucalyptus saligna*), over 80 m tall, broke the previous South African tree height record held by two gum trees, known as the “Twin Giants of Magoebaskloof”, by a metre. This tree has also reached a new African tree height record. Three giant Mexican pine trees (*Pinus oocarpa*) measured over 50 m. Few pine trees anywhere in the world grow this tall. It is estimated that the pine trees, like their gum tree counterparts nearby, are more than a century old.



shores are particularly rich in biodiversity, with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals having been recorded.

The productive waters of the west coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities. Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The South African fishing industry, which was once concentrated in the hands of a few, largely white-owned companies, has undergone intensive transformation over the past few years.

South Africa has a well-established fishery sector and is a net exporter of fishery products. However, most of South African fisheries are considered to be fully used and high-value fisheries such as abalone, prawns and linefish are largely overexploited.

The country also has a well-developed fisheries-management system and is one of the leading countries in the implementation of an ecosystem approach for fisheries management. South Africa plays an important role internationally, in the regional fisheries management organisations and regional programmes such as the Benguela Current Commission and other related programmes.

The programme aims to promote the equitable and sustainable management and efficient use of marine living resources.

The South African coast provides substantial opportunities for economic and social development. However, it is a resource at risk from inappropriate developments, pollution, poaching and over-use. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and

Fisheries plans to look at the economic prospects for marine culture, namely the husbanding and harvesting of sea plants for economic purposes.

The department plans to reduce the degradation of the marine environment through policies that promote conservation and sustainable use of marine living resources. It also aims to restore and maintain productive capacity and biodiversity of the marine environment and protect human health.

The projected increase in demand for high-end fishery products provides an opportunity for substantial increases in aquaculture production.

South Africa's commercial fishery industry is valued at about R2 billion annually and employs about 27 000 people.

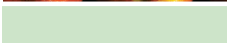
The total annual fish production from marine fisheries is more than 600 000 t. Given the market trends, South Africa's environmental potential for aquaculture and the state of development of its industry, production could grow from 3 543 t (worth R218 million) to more than 90 000 t (worth R2,4 billion) over the next 10 to 20 years.

The fishing industry has an annual turnover of about R80 billion and contributes 0,5% to the GDP.

In 2010, a policy review process was developed and implemented for fishing rights allocations in the commercial sector. A strategy was also put in place for abalone and hake fishing.



POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

The implementation of rural development is expected to result in vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities and food security for all. The essence of such a community would be measured through the following:

- food security
- rapid and sustained economic growth
- intellectual development
- environmental sustainability
- healthy rural communities
- political maturity
- social stability and growth
- self-reliant and confident communities
- fairness in line with the Bill of Rights
- social cohesion.

With the introduction of government's outcomes-based approach, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform has revised its 2010/13 Strategic Plan to take into account the need to create vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities, including food security. The outcome is linked to five outputs, which are all pertinent to the department's work and which have been integrated into its strategic goals. These are: sustainable agrarian reform with a thriving small and large farming sector; improved access to affordable and diverse food; improved rural services to support sustainable livelihoods; rural job creation linked to skills training and promoting economic livelihoods; and an enabling institutional environment for sustainable and improved growth.

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform's strategy to achieve sustainable rural development is "agrarian transformation". It will focus on establishing rural business initiatives, cooperatives, cultural initiatives, agro-industries and rural settings; empowering rural people and communities (especially women and the youth); and upgrading economic, social, information and communications infrastructure, public amenities and facilities in villages and small rural towns.

Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP)

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform's purpose is to initiate, facilitate, coordinate and catalyse the implementation of the CRDP that leads to sustainable and vibrant rural communities. The key thrust of the CRDP

In 2011, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, working with partners from the public and private sectors, intervened in areas which had been hit by natural disasters – lightning, flash floods and thunderstorms – by providing emergency houses using steel and sandbag technologies, as well as accessories such as gel stoves, solar lights, solar radios and lightning conductors.



These interventions go a long way in assisting affected households to recover and give government an opportunity to pilot new ways to help vulnerable households.

Another challenge is access to clean, piped water for rural communities. The department has revived existing boreholes and drilled eight new ones in Limpopo. Elsewhere in the country, the department, working with its national, provincial and local counterparts, facilitated the installation of 400 rainwater-harvesting tanks; constructed a water reservoir in Msinga, KwaZulu-Natal; drilled and equipped boreholes; had a water reservoir under construction in Disake, North West; and a 37-km water pipeline from the Orange River to Riemvasmaak, Northern Cape, was nearing completion.

framework is an integrated programme of rural development, land reform and agrarian change, whose strategic focus is social cohesion and development.

The CRDP is premised on three phases: Phase One, which focuses on meeting basic human needs; Phase Two, which has large-scale infrastructure development as driver; and Phase Three, with the emergence of rural industrial and credit financial sectors, which is driven by small-, medium- and micro-enterprises and village markets.

By October 2011, the CRDP was being implemented at 65 sites across the country. Some 33 560 ha of agricultural land had been acquired to provide emerging farmers with access to land. Some 116 farms have been recapitalised by providing funds for, among other things, infrastructure, mechanisation, seeds, livestock and the transfer of skills by commercial farmers to enhance the productivity of transferred farms.

In each area where the CRDP is being implemented, a new vibrancy has been created around working together, involving communities, the three spheres of government and the private sector. This has enabled communities to mobilise resources from all sectors of government to enhance delivery.

Key role players in the land-reform sector have set a goal that all land-reform farms should be 100% productive and sustainable within the next three years.



The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform has set aside R3,3 billion for land reform, excluding the restitution programme.

Of that amount, R2 billion had been earmarked for strategic land acquisition of about 303 612 ha and R1,3 billion for making all land-reform farms fully functional and 100% productive, through the Recapitalisation and Development Programme. This is expected to cover an additional 387 farms and revitalise 27 irrigation schemes, which have already been identified across the country.

An inclusive CRDP stakeholder participation model has been developed in the form of the Council of Stakeholders, functioning as a partner in planning, implementation and monitoring. Through this inclusive body, communities themselves have become central to their own development.

Through the work undertaken at the CRDP sites, and in conjunction with fellow departments at national, provincial and local government level, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform erected infrastructure such as housing, water, sanitation, pack-sheds, community halls, multipurpose centres, fencing, early childhood development centres and satellite police stations; and renovated schools and clinics.

The department initiated a new youth skills development and employment programme, the National Rural Youth Service Corps. The main goal is to develop a cadre of young community paraprofessionals and artisans who will take responsibility for the development of their own communities.

Four young people, of whom one must be a person with a disability, are expected to be enlisted into the programme from each of the 2 872 rural wards. At least 50% of these must be women.

The contractual period, including the training period is 24 months. This process will lead to the employment and skilling of almost 12 000 youths, of whom almost 3 000 should be youth with disabilities.

In its initial phase, it enlisted 7 958 young people between 18 and 35 years old, with a minimum educational standard of Grade 10. They were drawn from rural wards across the country, including farms, small rural towns and some peri-urban areas.

Of these, 600 have gone through 10 days of training in self-orientation and life skills through further education and training colleges and 500 have gone through two months of non-military training, mainly character development, personal discipline and patriotism. Each one receives a stipend of R60 a day, which will be increased as they receive high-level skills training.

Land reform

The introduction of the CRDP, of which land reform is an integral part, has necessitated that the approach be overhauled and new strategies adopted. While achieving equitable distribution of land remains a fundamental policy of government, there is an even more urgent need to ensure that land reform is measured not only through equity but also through productivity, leading to enhanced food security for all, job creation and skills training among beneficiaries.

In 2011, the Land Reform Programme had a target of 283 592 ha for the acquisition of strategically located land and a target of 504 farms was set for developing farms in distress through recapitalisation and development. The programme has transferred 322 844,9931 ha, equalling 288 projects and provided access to land to 3 089 beneficiaries through either leases or caretakership agreements. Of the total number of delivered hectares, 276 396,6893 ha were registered in the name of the State and the remaining 46 448,3038 ha were transferred through Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development to finalise the commitments the department had at the time of the shift from grants-based land reform to the Pro-Active Land Acquisition Strategy.

In August 2011, Cabinet received the *Green Paper on Land Reform, 2011* for public comment. The thrust of the Green Paper is based on the view that:

A self-empowerment project initiated five years ago is improving the lives of 600 women in Swayimane, a disadvantaged rural community in KwaZulu-Natal. Through the Zimele (meaning “I am self-reliant” in isiZulu) Self-Help and Savings Programme, a non-profit organisation that seeks to improve the quality of life in KwaZulu-Natal’s rural areas, the women were able to start small businesses. They were able to save more than R170 000 over the five years of the scheme’s existence. Together with loans amounting to R292 932, the savings fund bankrolled the women’s enterprises such as businesses in agriculture, crafts, retail and catering.



RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

- separate rural development and land reform be aligned at policy programme and institutional levels to ensure coordinated service delivery
- in pursuit of agrarian transformation, there is a link between the land question and agriculture as the basis for the search for an economic rationale and a vision of a post-reform agrarian structure.

The demand for land may also be for other productive but non-agricultural uses.

The change agenda pursued in the Green Paper is to create a new trajectory for land reform. A set of proposals is put forward, which attempts to break from the past without significantly disrupting agricultural production and food security, and to avoid redistributions that do not generate livelihoods, employment and incomes.

The Green Paper focuses on seven key areas, namely:

- a vision for land reform
- principles underlying land reform
- current challenges and weaknesses: rationale for change
- an improved trajectory for land reform (including institutions to support land reform)
- the strategic thrust for land reform

Indigenous people in South Africa have sustained their unique world views and associated knowledge systems for millennia, even while undergoing major social upheaval as a result of forces beyond their control. Many of the core values, beliefs and practices associated with those world views have survived and are beginning to be recognised as having an adaptive integrity that is as valid for today's generations as it was for the past generations.

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, through the Chief Directorate: Technology, Research and Development, has embarked on an awareness campaign on indigenous knowledge at Comprehensive Rural Development Programme sites in the nine provinces.

The awareness campaign primarily seeks to recognise, collect, document, restore and exhibit indigenous knowledge systems (IKS), to protect, preserve and promote their existence. The project also intends to empower rural communities in ways through which they can improve their socio-economic status using IKS, such as patenting and commercialising their IKS products and instilling pride in their use of IKS. The awareness workshops consist of traditional activities such as music, dance, poetry and African cuisine.



- land-reform experiences elsewhere
- challenges and constraints.

The department is working on a number of policy initiatives over the medium term.

The *Green Paper on Agrarian Transformation, Rural Development and Land Reform* had been gazetted by May 2011, followed by a White Paper that was expected to be submitted to Cabinet in 2012.

The department is proposing a three-tiered system of land ownership in South Africa. The three tiers will be:

- state land, which will be under leasehold
- private land, which will be held under freehold with limited extent
- foreign ownership, with precarious tenure linked to productivity and partnership models with South African citizens.

Land redistribution

The land redistribution programme is largely implemented through the Provision of Land and Assistance Act, 1993.

By 2010, 5,9 million ha of land had been acquired through redistribution and restitution.

The tenure issues of millions of South Africans living and working on farms, and in communal areas and small rural towns remain a challenge for government.

Recapitalisation and development

The Recapitalisation and Development Programme is aimed at resuscitating all distressed land-reform projects implemented since 1994. In 2010/11, the department had planned to develop 504 farms in distress. It advertised 852 projects and 411 farms were selected for recapitalisation and development. Irrigation systems were installed in Boschhoek, Igalelo and at Nxamalala in Msinga in KwaZulu-Natal.

The department worked with its stakeholders towards revitalising seven defunct irrigation schemes at an estimated cost of R370 million. This project was expected to be implemented in 2011/12. It is envisaged that this programme will contribute a great deal to improving food security in the country.

By August 2011, the Recapitalisation and Development Programme had been implemented at 171 farms across the country, creating at least 1 316 permanent jobs and 2 724 short-term employment opportunities.

RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

Land administration

The department aims to provide value-added public land information and support services to clients and to ensure the efficient administration of state land.

Land-rights management

The department aims to provide tenure security that creates socio-economic opportunities for people on farms and in communal areas to ensure vibrant and sustainable communities characterised by social cohesion and development.

Geospatial services, technology development and disaster management

The department is responsible for the national control survey network, the national mapping and aerial imagery programmes and the provision of geospatial information services.

Cadastral survey management

The Cadastral Survey Management Branch aims to provide efficient cadastral survey-management services and cadastral information services in support of land delivery and development.

Deeds registration

The 10 deeds registries are located in Pretoria, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Pietermaritzburg, Bloemfontein, Kimberley, King William's Town, Vryburg, Mthatha and Nelspruit. These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than eight million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas in terms of the Deeds Registries Act, 1937 and the Sectional Titles Act, 1986.

Deeds registration has progressively introduced e-Cadastre, which is aimed at improving cadastral surveys management and deeds registration as well as the consolidation of data stores.

By 31 March 2011, a total of 904 928 deeds and documents had been registered countrywide.

The e-Cadastre Project's enterprise architecture investigation, which is aimed at consolidating cadastral surveys and

deeds registration data stores, has been concluded. Digital scanning of the microfilm records has commenced.

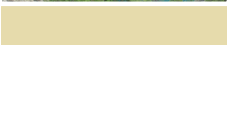
Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights (CRLR)

The CRLR is a statutory body set up in terms of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994, as amended. The role of the commission is to provide redress to victims of dispossession of rights in land, as a result of racially discriminatory laws and practices that took place after 19 June 1913.

The CRLR settled 457 claims between April 2010 and March 2011, benefiting 13 310 households. Consequently, 124 507 260 ha were restored and the cost of land paid amounted to over R800 million. The financial compensation paid to beneficiaries was over R460 million.



POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



MINERAL RESOURCES

MINERAL RESOURCES

South Africa's mining industry has been and remains the bedrock of Africa's economic powerhouse. The mining sector and its related industries are critical to the country's socio-economic development.

South Africa is well endowed with a considerable mineral resource base, estimated by Citibank at US\$2,5 trillion. The country's mining sector contributes about 8% to gross domestic product, which increases further to 18% when taking into account the indirect effect of mining on the economy. South Africa ranks among the top 10 countries in terms of the production of minerals such as manganese, iron ore, gold, chrome, ferrochrome and piped medical gases.

South Africa's mineral wealth is typically found in the following well-known geological formations and settings:

- the Witwatersrand Basin yields some 94% of South Africa's gold output and contains considerable resources of uranium, silver, pyrite and osmiridium
- the Bushveld Complex is known for its platinum-group metals (PGMs) (with associated copper, nickel and cobalt mineralisation), chromium and vanadium-bearing titanium iron-ore formations as well as large deposits of industrial minerals, including fluorspar and andalusite
- the Transvaal Supergroup contains enormous resources of manganese and iron ore
- the Karoo Basin extends through Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State as well as Limpopo, hosting considerable bituminous coal and anthracite resources
- the Phalaborwa Igneous Complex hosts extensive deposits of copper, phosphate, titanium, vermiculite, feldspar and zirconium ores
- kimberlite pipes host diamonds that also occur in alluvial, fluvial and marine settings
- heavy mineral sands contain ilmenite, rutile and zircon
- significant deposits of lead-zinc ores associated with copper and silver are found in the Northern Cape near Aggeneys.

According to the Chamber of Mines, in 2008 the South African mining sector employed 518 585 employees compared to 495 474 in 2007, representing an improvement of 4,7%. Mining accounted for 6,1% of total non-agricultural formal employment in the economy and 7,8% of total private-sector non-agricultural employment.

Policy

The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 has opened doors for the substantial and meaningful participation of historically disadvantaged South Africans in the exploration and exploitation of mineral resources.

In 2010, the Department of Mineral Resources concluded an assessment of the progress of the industry's transformation against the Mining Charter objectives.

The racial ownership pattern of the country's mining assets had remained largely unchanged, with only 8,9% black ownership attained by 2009 against the target of 15%.

The reviewed Mining Charter, launched in September 2010, seeks to correct this, putting emphasis on 26% of South Africa's mining assets being Black Economic Empowerment-compliant by 2014.

It also provides for the complete elimination of hostels on South Africa's mines by 2014, and introduces a sustainable element, premised on the understanding that the social licence to operate includes the environment, health and safety performance.

Under the charter, companies found not complying could face penalties, which could include the revoking of a mining company's licence.

Small-scale mining

The Department of Mineral Resources deems the role of small-scale mining in community upliftment, job creation and poverty alleviation as critical.

The department's small-scale mining strategy provides a framework for creating a sustainable sector that is characterised by growth and development, and contributes to rural development, job creation and poverty alleviation through community-linked small, medium and micro-enterprise projects.

Small-scale mining projects that fall within the Presidential poverty nodes will receive special attention. The Department

In April 2011, the Ministry of Mineral Resources launched the online South African Mineral Resources Administration System for applying for prospecting rights, mining permits and mining rights. By February 2012, more than 3 000 applications had been lodged.



MINERAL RESOURCES

The Northern Cape Diamond Strategy is aimed at diversifying the province's economy from a primary-sector focus to secondary value-addition activities by establishing Kimberley as a Centre of Excellence (CoE) within the Southern African Development Community.



The Kimberley International Diamond and Jewellery Academy is one of the six priority elements of the strategy. Its objectives include:

- responding to skills demands and development opportunities within the sector in a rapid and strategic manner, and engaging proactively with the sector to anticipate skills needs
- providing a mechanism for employers within the sector to formulate skills-development strategies that will increase competitiveness in regional, national and international markets
- providing accredited courses recognised by government and sought after by the industry, with eventual international accreditation
- promoting the empowerment of previously disadvantaged industry workers, including new entrants, through skills-development programmes
- becoming an integral part of the Diamond CoE by promoting and developing skills as a critical component of competitiveness
- operating in a professional and business-like manner
- becoming financially and technically self-sustaining within five years of its establishment.

of Mineral Resources aims to identify and demarcate areas with mineral deposits and foster economies-of-scale by forming community clusters.

Small-scale mining projects and government-supported initiatives are also to be linked with financial institutions.

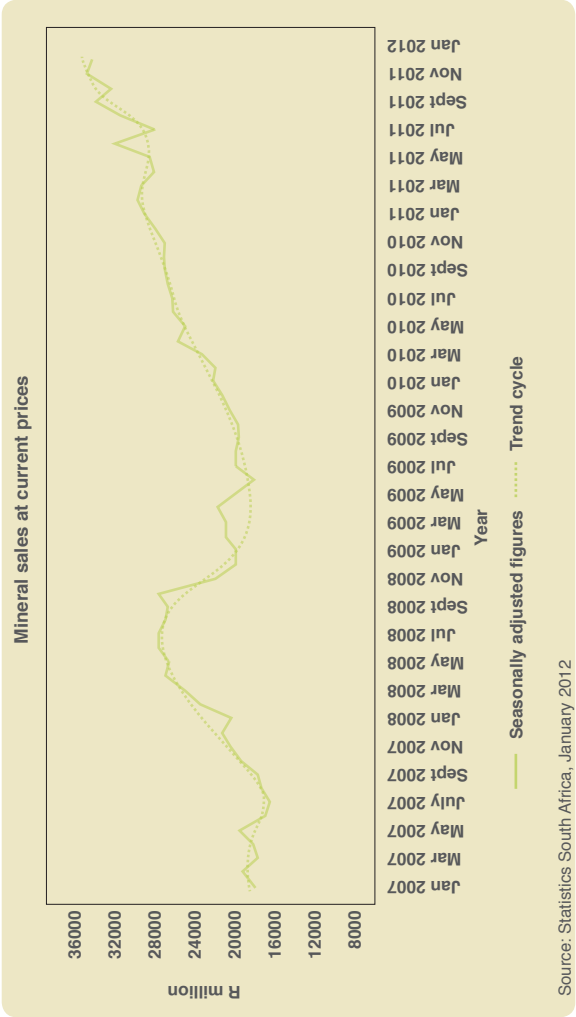
Reserves

South Africa has the world's largest resources of PGMs (87,7% of world total), manganese (80%), chromium (72,4%), gold (29,7%) and alumino-silicates. South Africa also accounts for over 40% of global production of ferrochromium, PGMs and vanadium.

Gold

In 2009, total world gold demand increased by 8,4% to 4 264 t. This was the net effect of a 16,3% decrease to 2 417 t in demand for fabrication, a 51,6% fall in gold bar hoarding to 187 t, an increase of 33,3% in implied net investment to 1 429 t and a decrease of 27,8% to 254 t in producer dehedging.

MINERAL RESOURCES



MINERAL RESOURCES

Silver

South Africa does not have a primary silver mine and the metal is produced only as a by-product of other minerals. Silver was produced as a by-product from 13 gold operations, one uranium mine, two copper mines and two platinum mines in 2008. Despite the vagaries of the global economy, global production was estimated at 718,3 million ounces in 2009.

Coal

South Africa's saleable coal production declined by a marginal 0,8% to reach 250,6 Mt in 2009 compared to 2008. Local sales declined by 6,2% to 184,7 Mt while export sales declined by 0,2 % to 60,5 Mt. The value of local sales rose by 14,5% to R34,5 billion, while revenue from export sales fell by 30,8% to R30,9 billion.

Platinum-group metals

South Africa's PGM production decreased by 1,6% to 271,3 t in 2009 from 275,8 t in 2008. Production of platinum and palladium fell by 3,7% to 140,7 t and by 0,5% to 75,1 t, respectively, while production of rhodium increased marginally to 20 t. However, despite a significant increase of 12,5% to 250,9 t in the export sales mass, revenue from such sales decreased by 31,3% to R53,5 billion, mainly due to low PGM prices in 2009 caused by the global economic crisis.

Non-ferrous minerals

Production of primary non-ferrous metals and minerals, excluding titanium and zirconium minerals, decreased slightly by 0,41% to 207,7 kt in 2009, compared to 2008, while total sales declined by 26,2% to R8,8 billion. Local sales volume decreased by 2,5% to 99,6 kt, while exports declined by 5,9% to 105,5 kt. Domestic sales revenue decreased by 27,9% to R4 billion, while export revenue decreased by 24,8% to R4,9 billion in 2009. Total sales of non-ferrous metals and minerals (primary and processed), excluding titanium minerals, zirconium minerals and aluminium, declined by 25,5% to R10,2 billion in 2009. During the same period, domestic sales decreased by 26,1% to R5,3 billion, while export sales declined by 24,9% to R4,9 billion.

Acid rock drainage occurs owing to reactions between sulphide minerals, oxygen and water, catalysed by bacteria. Key problem areas have been identified, including the Witwatersrand Gold Fields (the gold-mining areas of Gauteng and the Free State), various coalfields in Mpumalanga and the Okiep Copper District in the Northern Cape. Other areas are still being investigated.



In response to this threat, government is constructing a number of canals in problem areas, including Grootvlei and the Klipspruit area between Florida Lake and the Fleurhof Dam. A task team, led by the Council for Geoscience, drafted a report with recommendations that included pumping and treating the water in the western, central and eastern basins, which was actioned by government.

In 2011/12, R208 million was allocated to meet the needs associated with acid mine damage in the Witwatersrand Basin.

Ferrous minerals

Ferrous minerals are produced from some 32 mines and 23 ferroalloy smelters. Total sales of ferrous minerals amounted to R61,8 billion in 2009, contributing 25,6% to South Africa's primary and processed mineral sales. Ferrous minerals' export sales accounted for R53,4 billion, which is 30,4% of South Africa's export sales. At R36 billion, primary ferrous minerals contributed 14,5% to the revenue generated by the country's minerals industry.

Over the last decade, increasing portions of the production of chrome, manganese and vanadium ore have been processed to value-added alloys in line with the drive for beneficiation, whereas the bulk of growth in iron ore production has been exported.

Industrial minerals

There are some 680 producers of industrial minerals in South Africa, of which almost half are in the sand and aggregate sector.

There are some 153 producers of clays (brick-making and special), 40 limestone and dolomite, 79 dimension stone, 28 salt and 20 silica producers. Sales of primary industrial minerals in South Africa grew steadily at an annualised compound growth rate of 15% from 2005 to 2009.

Industrial minerals contributed 4,6% of the total revenue from South African mineral sales during 2009, of which R10 billion was from local sales and R1 billion from exports.

MINERAL RESOURCES

From 2005 to 2009, sales of primary industrial minerals grew at an annualised compounded rate of 15%. However, total revenue decreased from R13,6 billion in 2008 to R11,1 billion in 2009, owing to the depressed economic conditions, which resulted in weak demand for commodities in most sectors.

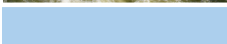
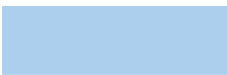
Processed minerals

Total sales revenue of processed minerals decreased by 45,6% from R86,1 billion in 2008 to R46,8 billion in 2009, and export sales accounted for 80% of total sales. The value of local sales of processed mineral products decreased by 53% from R17,4 billion in 2008 to R9,4 billion in 2009. The largest contributors to total sales were classified commodities at 48,7% as well as chromium alloys at 38,7%. Total production of processed minerals decreased by 18,5% to 6,6 Mt in 2009.

Mine health and safety

The safety track record in the South African mining industry is a matter of great concern to the Department of Mineral Resources, although the mining industry recorded a year-on-year reduction in fatalities from mine accidents from 2009 to 2010. In total, 127 mine employees died in 2010, compared to 168 fatalities in 2009. Fall-of-ground accidents remain the largest accident category and the predominant cause of fatalities, followed by transportation and machinery respectively. An amount of R145,8 million was allocated towards health and safety programmes in 2011/12.

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



ENERGY AND WATER

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ENERGY AND WATER

Energy use in South Africa is characterised by a high level of dependence on cheap and abundantly available coal. South Africa imports a large amount of crude oil. A limited quantity of natural gas is also available.

The Department of Energy's Energy Policy is based on the following key objectives:

- ensuring energy security
- achieving universal access and transforming the energy sector
- regulating the energy sector
- effective and efficient service delivery
- optimal use of energy resources
- ensuring sustainable development
- promoting corporate governance.

Integrated Resource Plan (IRP)

The IRP lays the foundation for the country's energy mix up to 2030, and seeks to find an appropriate balance between the expectations of different stakeholders considering a number of key constraints and risks, including:

- reducing carbon emissions
- new technology uncertainties such as costs, operability and lead time to build
- water usage
- localisation and job creation
- southern African regional development and integration
- security of supply.

The IRP provides for a diversified energy mix, in terms of new generation capacity, that will comprise:

- coal at 14% (government's view is that there is a future for coal in the energy mix, and that it should continue research and development to find ways to clean the country's abundant coal resources)
- nuclear at 22,6%
- open-cycle gas turbine at 9,2% and closed-cycle gas turbine at 5,6%
- renewable energy carriers, which include hydro at 6,1%, wind at 19,7%, concentrated solar power at 2,4% and photovoltaic at 19,7%.

The Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa continues to produce, through its subsidiary National Toxicology Programme, radioisotopes that are critical to diagnose and treat cancer. They have become the leading commercial supplier of medical radioisotopes that are produced from low-enriched uranium as opposed to production from nuclear weapons-grade uranium.



Power sources

Coal

In addition to the extensive use of coal in the domestic economy, about 28% of South Africa's production is exported, mainly through the Richards Bay Coal Terminal, making South Africa the fourth-largest coal exporting country in the world.

South Africa's coal is obtained from collieries that range from among the largest in the world to small-scale producers.

About 51% of South African coal mining is done underground and about 49% is produced by open-cast methods. The coal-mining industry is highly concentrated, with a few companies accounting for 85% of saleable coal production.

Production is concentrated in large mines, with 11 mines accounting for 70% of the output. South African coal for local electricity production is among the cheapest in the world. The beneficiation of coal, particularly for export, results in more than 65 million tons (Mt) of coal discards being produced every year.

About 21% of the run-of-mine coal produced is exported, and 21% is used locally (excluding power-station coal). The rest is not saleable and is discarded. The remainder of South Africa's coal production feeds the various local industries:

- 62% is used for electricity generation
- 23% for petrochemical industries (Sasol)
- 8% for general industry
- 4% for the metallurgical industry (Mittal)
- 4% is purchased by merchants and sold locally or exported.

Nuclear

Cabinet approved the Nuclear Energy Policy for South Africa in June 2008. The policy aims to increase the role of nuclear energy as part of the process of diversifying South Africa's primary energy sources to ensure energy security. The policy aims to reduce the overreliance on coal.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ENERGY AND WATER

Eskom, together with Sasol; the Petroleum, Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa; Anglo American; and the South African National Energy Research Institute, is sponsoring the development of the *South African Carbon Dioxide (CO₂) Storage Atlas*. The atlas will represent an early assessment, aimed at identifying areas and estimating the potential capacity for geological storage of CO₂ in South Africa.



Eskom is investing up to 20 000 megawatts (MW) on new nuclear capacity by 2025.

Eskom's Koeberg Nuclear Power Station's two reactors outside Cape Town supply 1 800 MW to the national grid when both operate at full power, providing about 6,5% of South Africa's electricity.

The National Nuclear Regulator is the prime safety regulator and is responsible for protecting persons, property and the environment against nuclear damage by establishing safety standards and regulatory practices. It exercises safety-related regulatory control over the siting, design, construction and operation of nuclear installations and other actions.

The Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa (Necsa) undertakes and promotes research and development in the field of nuclear energy, radiation sciences and technology, medical isotope manufacturing, nuclear liabilities' management, waste management and decommissioning. It is a public entity reporting to the Minister of Energy.

Necsa's reactor-produced radioisotopes are exported to more than 50 countries. The research reactor at Pelindaba, Safari-1, is the most commercialised reactor of its kind in the world with International Organisation for Standardisation 9001-accreditation. It earns South Africa foreign revenue worth millions of rands.

Liquid fuels

A key feature of the South African liquid fuels sector is the fact that most of the transport fuel is produced in the coastal areas, but about 68% thereof is consumed in the inland region of Gauteng. This requires investments in the storage and distribution facilities for the supply of petroleum products at the point of need.

A new R15-billion pipeline to transport petroleum from Durban to Johannesburg is under construction. The 555-km trunk pipeline, with pump stations, terminals and a 160-km

inland pipeline network, will increase capacity from the existing 4,4 billion litres to 8,4 billion litres and is expected to become operational by the end of December 2013.

The petrol price in South Africa is linked to certain international petrol markets in United States dollar. This means that supply and demand for petroleum products in the international markets, combined with the Rand-Dollar exchange rate, influence the domestic price.

Oil and gas

South Africa has limited oil reserves and imports from the Middle East and Africa (Saudi Arabia, Iran, Kuwait, the United Arab Emirates, Yemen, Qatar, Iraq, Nigeria, Egypt and Angola) meet about 95% of South Africa's crude oil requirements.

Refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel, residual fuel oil, paraffin, jet fuel, aviation gasoline, liquid petroleum gas and refinery gas are produced by:

- refining crude oil (oil refineries)
- converting coal to liquid fuels and gas to liquid fuels (Sasol)
- turning natural gas into liquid fuels (PetroSA).

Another major role player in South Africa's liquid fuels industry is the Central Energy Fund (CEF). Its mandate is to engage in acquiring, exploring, generating, manufacturing, marketing and distributing any energy form, especially oil and gas. It also engages in research relating to the energy sector.

The CEF's diversified portfolio of activities is housed in the following active subsidiaries:

- The Strategic Fuel Fund Association, which was established to procure and store crude oil and manage strategic crude oil stocks for South Africa. It trades and leases spare storage ullage and is involved in oil-pollution control.
- PetroSA, which owns and operates the gas-to-liquids plant at Mossel Bay. PetroSA is also involved in oil and gas exploration and production, and its offshore production platform supplies gas and condensates by gas pipeline to its onshore plant for conversion into a range of environmentally friendly transportation fuels and associated products for the domestic and international markets.
- The Petroleum Agency South Africa, which promotes and markets exploration in South African territory (both offshore and onshore for oil and gas), negotiates and monitors concessions and licences on behalf of government, and is the custodian of geological and geophysical data.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ENERGY AND WATER

In 2011, Cabinet approved the implementation of key tasks for the acceleration of the Solar Water Geyser (SWG) Roll-Out Programme.



The key tasks include:

- developing guidelines for the SWG Roll-Out Programme
- engaging with potential funders
- establishing a programme steering committee.

The National Energy Regulator of South Africa granted Eskom R1,15 billion through the second Multi-Year Price Determination (MYPD2) process for the installation of 259 000 systems. By October 2011, 144 141 units had been installed at a cost of over R750 million. MYPD2 enabled Eskom to increase installations to 446 000 units by the end of 2011/12.

- iGas, which is a state-owned entity for the development of gas infrastructure in South Africa. iGas partnered Sasol and ENH of Mozambique in establishing the natural gas pipeline from Mozambique to South Africa.

Government has committed to a 2% blend target for biofuels inclusion in the national fuel supply. In addition, several other developing countries have set blending targets of 10% for biofuels without any need for significant engine adjustment. Were South Africa to increase its blending target to 10%, some 125 000 direct jobs could be created, many of which would be based in rural areas, where the deepest pockets of poverty occur.

Electricity

Eskom generates, transmits and distributes electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers and redistributors. The majority of sales are in South Africa and other countries of southern Africa account for a small percentage of sales.

South Africa is faced with a situation in which the demand for electricity continues to grow within a supply-constrained environment.

Eskom's New-Build Programme was launched in 2005 with the aim of adding more than 17 000 MW to the national electricity grid by 2018. By mid-2011, more than 5 000 MW of new generation capacity and more than 3 000 km of new transmission lines had been added to the country's electricity grid.

As part of the programme, Eskom has spent R20,5 billion on recommissioning three power stations that have been out

of service for over 20 years: Camden, Komati and Grootvlei, all in Mpumalanga. Together, the stations can produce an estimated 3 800 MW, which equals that of a new power station. The cost of recommissioning the retired stations is estimated at almost R100 billion less than a new station, and the electricity will be available sooner. Camden was reopened in 2010, with work progressing on Komati and Grootvlei. Eskom aims to have all three operational by 2013.

Construction of two massive new coal-fired stations – Medupi and Kusile – is in progress.

Integrated Electrification Programme

The electrification programme is a modern energy option and also has a positive socio-economic impact on the lives of South Africans. There have been improvements in the education, health and social circumstances of communities that have been electrified through the grid and off-grid technologies. By 2011, South Africa's energy penetration stood at over 75%, and with R3,2 billion allocated to the electrification programme, the department aimed to connect an additional 150 000 households, build 10 substations and contribute about 5 000 jobs. In 2010/11, the department created 5 811 jobs and connected 195 000 homes to the electricity grid, exceeding its target by 45 000 households.

Solar energy

Solar power is being used increasingly for water-pumping through the rural water-provision and sanitation programme of the Department of Water Affairs.

Eskom's Solar Water Heating Programme has gained momentum, with 60 183 claims received for the solar water heating rebate, of which 41 690 were paid by the end of 2010.

Wind energy

The Darling Wind Farm in the Western Cape has four wind turbines. All the electricity produced will be sold to the City of Cape Town as part of a long-term power agreement with the city. The facility consists of four German-designed wind turbines. The structures are 50 m high with the blades spanning 31 m. Each turbine will produce 1,3 MW, bringing the total output of the wind farm to 5,2 MW.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ENERGY AND WATER

The project is referred to as the National Demonstration Project and will be used as an example for future public-private partnerships in the establishment of alternative electricity generation. The R75-million project was the first “green-energy” initiative in the country to produce electricity from wind power commercially.

The first commercial wind farm at the Coega Industrial Development Zone, Port Elizabeth, in the Eastern Cape, will have a total power capacity of 57,5 MW, which is about 10% of the Nelson Mandela Bay electricity consumption, and can power about 80 000 homes with green energy.

Energy efficiency

Government set a target of 15% energy efficiency for the industry and 12% nationally to be achieved by 2015. The energy industry leads by example by committing to energy efficiency.

While the focus has been on energy-intensive industries, room has been created for other industries and the commercial sector to join the *Energy-Efficiency Campaign*, through the introduction of, among other things:

- efficient lighting and heating, ventilation and air conditioning and employee education
- efficient production processes and cogeneration in the industrial sector.

Government remains committed to the efficient use of available resources. It is also committed to broadening the energy mix, thereby moving away from being fossil-dominated to a more balanced combination, which places a high premium on the use of more efficient technologies and renewable-energy resources.

Sasol

Sasol is an integrated energy and chemical company. It beneficiates coal, oil and gas into liquid fuels, fuel components and chemicals with the help of its proprietary Fischer-Tropsch

The roughly 43,5 million compact fluorescent lamps (CFLs) introduced between 2004 and 2010 as part of Eskom’s efficient lighting programme holds the world record for the highest number of CFLs rolled out in one country through a single campaign.



processes. It mines coal in South Africa and produces gas in Mozambique and oil in Gabon. Its chemical manufacturing and marketing operations span the globe.

In South Africa, Sasol refines imported crude oil and retail liquid fuels through its network of retail convenience centres. Sasol also supplies fuels to other distributors in the region and gas to industrial customers in South Africa.

Energy and the environment

South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of greenhouse gases (GHGs) in the world and is the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. The National Climate-Change Strategy, developed by the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, requires that government departments collaborate in a coordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus. The Department of Energy is expected to respond to and mitigate climate change.

South Africa is a developing country or a Non-Annex 1 country. This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its GHG emissions.

However, the South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption and is a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emissions' intensity and emissions per capita.

South Africa must therefore proactively move the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the Department of Energy playing a prominent role.

The department has introduced systems to access investment through the Clean Development Mechanism of the Kyoto Protocol. It has developed the *White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development*, together with an energy-efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

Water

The Department of Water Affairs continues to focus on meeting water targets; managing South Africa's scarce water resources for long-term sustainability; improving the regulatory and institutional environment; spearheading transformation in the water

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ENERGY AND WATER

sector; and supporting the development of water-resources infrastructure. Ongoing key challenges include the department's role as a sector leader for water services.

The department adopted the Integrated Water Resources Management (IWRM) approach, which provides a more holistic approach to water management.

The IWRM requires intensive planning to ensure efficient, equitable and sustainable management of water resources and for coping with conflicting demands. The department developed two key strategic frameworks to guide it, namely the National Water Resource Strategy in South Africa of 2004, and the Water for Growth and Development Framework of 2008. The strategy seeks to achieve the reconciliation between the available water resources with growing requirements.

The Water for Growth and Development Framework guides actions and decisions that will ensure water security in terms of quantity and quality to support South Africa's requirements for economic growth and social development.

Water and sanitation

Between April and December 2011, 449 082 people were supplied with basic water supply. This means that South Africa has surpassed the Millennium Development Goal of halving the proportion of people without sustainable water and is likely to achieve the 2014 goal of universal access to potable water, despite the challenge of an ever-increasing number of households.

Major dams of South Africa

Dam	Full supply capacity (10 ⁶ m ³)	River
Gariep	5 341	Orange
Vanderkloof	3 171	Orange
Sterkfontein	2 616	Nuwejaarspruit
Nuwejaarspruit Vaal	2 603	Vaal
Pongolapoort	2 445	Pongolo
Bloemhof	1 264	Vaal

South Africa is supporting the security of its water supply by ensuring the completion of several major new water projects around the country by 2014.



The projects include the Mokolo Augmentation Project to supply water to the planned Medupi Power Station in Lephalale in Limpopo, and the Mooi-Mgeni Transfer Scheme Project, which will include the construction of the Spring Grove Dam around eThekweni/Durban and Umgungundlovu in KwaZulu-Natal.

Water-quality management

The Blue Drop and Green Drop certification programmes are flagship innovations of the Department of Water Affairs. Introduced in 2008, this incentive-based regulation system aims to improve municipal drinking-water quality and waste-water management.

South Africa's drinking-water quality matches best international practice and follows the guidelines set out by the World Health Organisation. As it involves a benchmark score of 95%, the Blue Drop certification is the recognition of exceptional performance, and should not be equated to a pass mark. It simply credits exceptional drinking-water quality.

In 2011, the Blue Drop Certification Programme verified the status of drinking-water quality and the management of the supply systems of 162 municipalities. Teams from the department assessed 914 water systems, compared to the 787 systems assessed in 2009.

In 2010/11, 66 water supply systems were awarded Blue Drop certificates, which was an increase of 74% from the 38 systems in 2009/10.

Working for Water (WfW)

Invasive alien species cause billions of rands of damage to South Africa's economy every year, and are one of the biggest threats to the country's biological biodiversity.

Of the estimated 9 000 plants introduced to this country, 198 are classified as invasive. It is estimated that these plants cover about 10% of the country and the problem is growing at an exponential rate.

The fight against invasive alien plants (IAPs) is spear-headed by the WfW Programme. Since its implementation in 1995, more than one million ha of IAPs have been cleared.

South Africa's first *Atlas of Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas* was launched in Pretoria in November 2011. The atlas provides the first comprehensive assessment of the freshwater ecosystem priority areas – those areas of the country that are most important for sustaining the health and continued functioning of freshwater ecosystems.



Maps were developed for each of the water management areas in South Africa. The maps facilitate informed choices and trade-offs that can be made based on a clear understanding of where valuable freshwater ecosystems are located.

WfW's aim is to reduce the impact of "water-guzzling" invasive species and protect indigenous biodiversity.

The project has been very effective and has seen the steady recovery of indigenous biodiversity in cleared areas and wetlands. It has seen the rebirth of flowing streams where riverbeds had been perennially dry.

WfW runs over 300 projects across South Africa.

Dams and water schemes

Bulk infrastructure is a critical element of water-services infrastructure and an integrated part of water-services management.

Initiatives to identify and establish new water resources are occurring for both surface and groundwater.

Government has implemented key projects to augment South Africa's water resources:

- The Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority has procured funding to implement the Mokolo and Crocodile River West Water Augmentation Project's first two phases with a total cost of about R2 billion, to deliver water to Eskom's new Medupi power station and other industries in the area, as well as domestic water to the Lephalale Local Municipality. The first water delivery is expected in 2014.
- In KwaZulu-Natal on the Mooi River, near Rosetta, a R2,2-billion contract was awarded for the construction of the 42 m-high Spring Grove Dam, with a storage capacity of 142 million m³. The first water delivery is expected late in 2012.
- R91,2 million was spent in 2011/12 to raise the Hazelmere Dam, to augment the water supply provided by Umgeni Water to KwaZulu-Natal's north coast.

- Construction of the De Hoop Dam to deliver water for domestic and agricultural use in the Greater Sekhukhune, Waterberg and Capricorn district municipalities. The estimated cost of its construction is approximately R3,1 billion. This will deliver water to three million Limpopo residents.
- During 2011/12, the construction of a water conveyance system from the Vaal Dam to Secunda to augment the water supply to Eskom power stations and Sasol was commissioned, comprising abstraction works, a storage reservoir, a high-lift pump station and a 121-km pipeline.

Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme (DSRP)

The department owns 314 dams. In 2004/05, a large number of these were identified as being in need of rehabilitation to bring their condition up to international standards. The DSRP started in 2005/06. Some R1,35 billion was spent by the end of 2010/11, completing the rehabilitation of 22 dams; R300,8 million was spent in 2010/11 alone.

A number of dams are in various phases of planning and design. The rehabilitation of 13 dams was in progress by the end of 2010/11:

- Molepo, Nsami, Mashashane, Chuniespoort and Rust de Winter in Limpopo
- Klein Maricopoort in the North West
- Elandsdrift, Grassridge, Glen Brock, Mankazana, Laing and Magwa in the Eastern Cape
- Boegoeberg in the Northern Cape.

In his 2012 State of the Nation address, President Jacob Zuma indicated government's commitment to build a dam in the former Transkei part of the Eastern Cape, using

South Africa's strategic bilateral engagements remain critical to advancing peace and security and enhancing water security in the region. In this regard, South Africa has developed strategic relations with neighbouring countries by signing cooperative water agreements. In 2011, South Africa signed the Statement of Intent on the Lesotho Highlands Water Project on the operation of cross-border water supply with Swaziland. The Phase II Agreement will augment the original treaty and the sale of hydro-electric power to South Africa generated by the proposed Katse-Kobong Pump Storage Scheme.

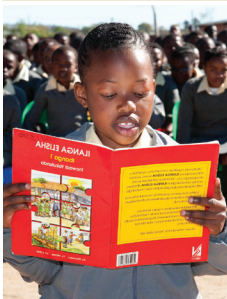


Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ENERGY AND WATER

the Umzimvubu River as a source, to expand agricultural production.

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



EDUCATION

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

EDUCATION

The Bill of Rights, contained in the Constitution, 1996 stipulates that everyone has the right to a basic education, including adult basic education and further education, which the State, through reasonable measures, must progressively make available and accessible.

Among the closely monitored performance areas are the number of Grade 12 learners qualifying for university entry as well as those students' Mathematics and Physical Science pass rates. Government aims to increase the number of Grade 12s qualifying to enrol for a Bachelor's Degree to 175 000 by 2014.

One way of doing this is to do an annual national assessment (ANA) that is standardised and internationally benchmarked. Analysis of the results of such assessments will inform the plans the department will adopt to improve the quality of learning and teaching.

Formal education in South Africa is categorised according to three levels – General Education and Training, Further Education and Training (FET) and Higher Education (HE).

Statutory bodies include the Council of Education Ministers; Heads of the Education Department's Committee; General and FET Quality Assurance Council; South African Qualifications Authority; Council on HE; South African Council for Educators; National Board for FET; Education Labour Relations Council; and the National Student Financial Aid Scheme.

In February 2011, more than six million primary school learners from grades one to six sat for the first ANA tests in Languages (home and first additional language) and Mathematics. The objective of the ANA is to establish a national benchmark by which the department will measure levels of Literacy and Numeracy in primary schools.

The results were released in April 2011 and showed several weaknesses in Numeracy and Literacy that needed urgent intervention.

At the July 2010 Cabinet Lekgotla, government announced plans to get more than 200 000 children between the ages of seven and 15 enrolled in school by 2014 by increasing the number of no-fee schools, while widening feeding schemes.

In 2011, the national Grade 12 pass rate was 70,2%, compared to 67,8% the previous year.



The national Department of Basic Education set aside R8 billion over a period of three years to replace mud and inappropriate structures and 119 new schools were completed in 2010 as multi-year projects.



In the 2011/12 financial year, over 3 322 students were supported with bursaries to study at Higher Education and Further Education and Training (FET) institutions. Through the Human Resource Development Council initiatives, 90 FET college lecturers were trained at the universities of Fort Hare, Walter Sisulu and Nelson Mandela Metropolitan.

There is also a drive to ensure that teachers are in class and teaching for the allocated school time.

By February 2012, there were more than 12 million learners in 24 365 public schools. They were taught by 365 447 teachers.

Basic education Targets

The Department of Basic Education has identified the following targets to be achieved by 2014:

- the number of Grade 12 learners who pass the national examinations and qualify to enter a Bachelor's programme at a university must increase from 105 000 to 175 000
- the number of Grade 12 learners who pass Mathematics and Physical Science must total 225 000 and 165 000 respectively
- the percentage of learners in grades three, six and nine in public schools who obtain the minimum acceptable mark in the ANA for Language and Mathematics (or Numeracy) must improve from between 27% and 38% to at least 60%.

Priorities

To support the education system, the Department of Basic Education set out the following priorities:

The National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP) is one of the most important components of the Government's Programme of Action. It was specifically assigned the responsibility of addressing children's ability to learn by providing them with nutritious meals.



The NSNP was extended to all secondary school learners in quintile three in eight provinces. By February 2012, 8,6 million learners had benefited from the programme.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

EDUCATION

- by 2014, there will be universal access to Grade R for all age-appropriate children
- adequate learning and teaching materials will be developed and distributed, particularly to those schools the department has identified.
- standardised ANA of the quality of learning will take place in grades three, six and nine yearly.

Policy

The Department of Basic Education finalised a comprehensive turnaround plan for improving the quality of learning and teaching in schools called *Action Plan 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025*.

The action plan aims to improve all aspects of education such as teacher recruitment, learner enrolment, school funding, mass literacy and numeracy and overall quality of education through specific measurable targets.

The adoption in 2010 of an outcomes-based approach in implementing government's priorities ensures that the work of government is measured according to outcomes. The performance outcomes are politically determined positions of government to achieve greater and more focused development. The outcomes approach enables the Department of Basic Education to set measurable targets and deliverables for monitoring progress in addressing challenges in education.

In 2010, the department trained over 10 000 Early Childhood Development (ECD) practitioners through the Expanded Public Works Programme.



By February 2011, more than 400 000 children accessing registered ECD facilities were being subsidised by government at a cost of between R12 and R25 per day.

The Department of Social Development launched the National *ECD Awareness Campaign* in June 2011, focusing on registering ECD facilities in rural areas and providing subsidies to eligible children.

As part of the campaign, 297 new ECD centres were registered in the first quarter of 2011, with 6 300 eligible children receiving subsidies. One of the key elements of this campaign is to ensure equalisation of subsidies for all eligible children in ECD centres, irrespective of where they live.

By February 2012, there were 19 331 ECD centres in the country. More than 848 000 children received ECD services and more than 514 000 of them were subsidised by government.

The Education Laws Amendment Act, 2005 provided the legal foundation for introducing no-fee schools in 2007.



By 2010, no-fee schools made up 81% of the country's public schooling system, benefiting 118 million learners. The schools receive a government subsidy of R640 to R855 per learner for quintiles one to three – the poorest schools classified as no-fee schools. Schools in quintiles four and five, deemed affluent schools, receive R428 and R147 per learner, respectively.

Curriculum development

Schooling 2025 is the new action plan by government to improve the education system in schools. It aims to improve all aspects of education such as teacher recruitment, learner enrolment, school funding, mass literacy and numeracy and overall quality of education.

The new curriculum gives learners the option of learning in their mother tongues for the first three years of their schooling. English will still be taught, but will not replace the mother tongue or home language in the early grades.

Each grade will have its own programme of study. This will ease the workload on teachers and allow learners to focus on specific projects and assessments. The number of subjects will also be reduced from eight to six for learners in the intermediate phase. This means that for learners in grades four to six, Technology will be combined with Science; Arts and Culture will be combined with Life Orientation; and Economic and Management Sciences will only be taught to learners from Grade Seven.

From 2011, learners' end-of-year results are calculated as follows:

- grades R to three will be based on 100% continuous assessment of work done throughout the year
- grades four to six will be based on 75% continuous assessment and 25% year-end exam results

Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe opened the University of Johannesburg's newly refurbished Soweto Campus in February 2011.



The facility serves as the centre for management sciences and education and includes the installation of new information technology, student accommodation, lecture halls, a student centre, law and health clinics, computer laboratories and sport facilities.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

EDUCATION

- grades seven to nine will be based on 40% continuous assessment and 60% year-end exam results
- grades 10 to 12 will be based on 25% continuous assessment and 75% year-end exam results.

Further Education and Training

Nearly 70% of all South Africans are under the age of 35. Government, through the Department of Higher Education and Training, developed a strategy to increase the ratio of young people who are in education, employment or training by 2014/15.

The aim of this strategy is to strengthen the capacity of the education and training system to provide pivotal programmes to a growing number of young post-school learners as well as adults at turning points in their careers.

Pivotal programmes are professional, vocational, technical and academic learning programmes, which meet critical needs for economic growth and social development.

These programmes generally combine course work at universities, universities of technology or colleges with structured learning at work – through, among other things, professional placements, work-integrated learning, apprenticeships, learnerships and internships.

The FET sector, with its 50 colleges and 263 campuses nationally, is the primary site for skills-development training.

The FET college system carries about 220 000 students in public colleges and less than 100 000 in private colleges.

Higher Education

The department is responsible for developing the country's education and training institutional capacity and resources into a coherent but diverse and differentiated post-school learning system, serving adults and youth within the frame-

A ministerial committee was established to review the funding framework of universities and make recommendations, taking into account the needs of universities over the next 15 years.



It will consider ways of improving the funding framework to strengthen rural institutions and ensure that historically disadvantaged students are supported within the system.

The Ministry allocated R686 million for the 2010 to 2012 financial period to address accommodation needs, including more student residences on campuses.

The *Kha Ri Gude* (Tshivenda for “let us learn”) *Mass Literacy Campaign* was launched in February 2008, to enable 4,7 million adults above the age of 15 to become literate and numerate in one of the 11 official languages.



The campaign makes specific efforts to target vulnerable groups. In 2011, 80% of the learners were women, 8% were people with disabilities, 25% were youth and 20% were above the age of 60.

Between the inception of the programme and March 2011, approximately 1,5 million learners became literate. From 2010 to March 2011, 609 199 learners successfully completed the programme.

work of the Human Resource Development Strategy for South Africa.

The department’s budget for 2011/12 was R9,1 billion. Universities received R19,5 billion and R4,3 billion was allocated to FET colleges.

Government aims to increase access to HE to the poor by, among other things, converting loans into bursaries for qualifying final-year students.

The HE landscape consists of the following institutions:

- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Cape Town
- University of Stellenbosch
- Rhodes University
- University of the Western Cape
- University of Zululand
- University of Venda
- University of the Free State
- North West University
- University of Pretoria
- University of South Africa
- Tshwane University of Technology

The new National Skills Development Strategy (NSDS) III was launched in January 2011. It draws on lessons learned from NSDS I and II. The key driving force of this strategy is improving the effectiveness and efficiency of the skills development system. It represents an explicit commitment to encouraging the linking of skills development to career paths, career development and promoting sustainable employment and in-work progression. The emphasis is particularly on those who do not have relevant technical skills or adequate reading, writing and numeracy skills to enable them to find employment.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

EDUCATION

President Jacob Zuma announced in his State of the Nation Address in February 2012 that R300 million had been allocated for preparatory work towards building new universities in Mpumalanga and the Northern Cape.



- Durban Institute of Technology
- Central University of Technology, Free State
- Mangosuthu University of Technology
- University of Johannesburg
- University of Limpopo
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University
- University of Fort Hare
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology
- Vaal University of Technology
- Walter Sisulu University for Technology and Science
- National Institute for HE, Northern Cape
- National Institute for HE, Mpumalanga.

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12 **SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY**

The aim of the Department of Science and Technology is to realise the full potential of Science and Technology (S&T) in social and economic development of human resources (HR), research and innovation.

The department funds basic research at universities and public entities, including science councils, so that they can train scientists, engineers and technologists and produce publications and patents. Almost 60% of the department's R4,4 billion budget is spent on public entities. Of the overall research and development (R&D) spend, the greatest portion is on the natural, medical and health sciences.

Strategies and programmes

The department has five strategic goals, namely to:

- develop the innovation capacity of the science system and thereby contribute to socio-economic development
- develop South Africa's knowledge-generation capacity
- develop appropriate human capital for research, development and innovation (RDI)
- build world-class RDI infrastructure
- position South Africa as a strategic international RDI partner and destination.

Human-capital development

The Department of Science and Technology's Human Capital and Science Platforms Subprogramme conceptualises, formulates and implements programmes aimed at developing and renewing science, engineering and technology human capital to promote knowledge generation, protection and exploitation.

Early in 2011, about 272 interns graduated from the Department of Science and Technology and the National Research Foundation (NRF) Internship Programme.

Since 2006, almost 750 interns have been hosted by various Department of Science and Technology institutions,

South Africa has the third-largest biodiversity-resource base in the world. In recent months, several biopiracy cases involving the pelargonium, rooibos and honey bush biological resources have been lodged with the European Patent Office. The Department of Science and Technology is supporting the Department of Trade and Industry in its initiative to amend intellectual property laws to broaden the protection that indigenous knowledge enjoys.



including science councils, national facilities and museums. By 2011, R29 million had been invested in the programme, with a further R45 million earmarked for the next three years.

At the sixth Science Centre World Congress in Cape Town in September 2011, the Minister of Science and Technology, Ms Naledi Pandor, announced the establishment of 26 science centres across South Africa. The centres are seen as vital to developing human capital and strengthening the country's S&T culture.

In September 2011, the South African Young Academy of Science (SAYAS) was launched. The SAYAS is intended to facilitate and enhance the participation of young scientists in the mainstream of R&D across all disciplines and to provide young scientists with the opportunity to use their knowledge to address South Africa's socio-economic challenges.

Astronomy

The Southern African Large Telescope was launched in November 2005, in Sutherland in the Northern Cape.

This is a multimillion-rand project involving Germany, Poland, the United States of America (USA), New Zealand and the United Kingdom (UK). It is the largest single optical telescope in the southern hemisphere.

Before and after the announcement of South Africa and Australia as hosts of the Square Kilometre Array radio telescope in May 2012, a number of initiatives have been undertaken.

South Africa has created a radio astronomy reserve in the Karoo, near the small town of Carnarvon in the Northern Cape.

The commissioning of the Karoo Array Telescope (KAT-7) was expected to be completed by the end of 2011. KAT-7 is a test bed for the KAT known as the MeerKAT radio telescope array which will start operations in 2016.

BioFISA is a three-year programme that is jointly funded by the Finnish Government and the Department of Science and Technology to build bioscience research capacity in southern Africa.

The programme is managed by the Southern Africa Network for Biosciences, which manages the funded projects in all bioscience nodes in southern Africa. It is also supported by the New Partnership for Africa's Development. The total amount expended in 2010/11 was R15,3 million.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12 **SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY**

By July 2011, the South African Square Kilometre Array Project Office had awarded almost 300 grants and scholarships worth almost €15 million to students and scientists from several African countries. Some of this aid has been instrumental in helping to establish new radio astronomy and related undergraduate courses at universities in Botswana, Ghana, Kenya, Madagascar, Mauritius, Mozambique and Zambia.



By July 2011, five years before the MeerKAT goes online, 43 000 hours of observing time, including a consortium led by internationally renowned astronomers, had been allocated for astronomy.

Nanotechnology

Nanotechnology, unlike other technologies, can find applications in virtually all areas of human life. In spite of it being in its beginning stages, some of the known issues related to nanotechnology suggest a wide spectrum of potential societal impact. For a society to switch from a merely passive, observational role to one of active participation, public discourse about nanotechnology must be encouraged.

Two nanotechnology innovation centres were established at the council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) and Mintek. The two nano-innovation centres have a budget of R134 million over the current Medium Term Expenditure Framework.

In 2011, the department acquired a world-class, R30-million high-resolution transmission electron microscope that was expected to be commissioned in the latter part of the year.

The Department of Science and Technology, in partnership with the University of the Western Cape and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, hosted the second nanoscience and nanotechnology summer school in November 2011, targeting Honours and Master's Degree students interested in the nanoscience and nanotechnology fields.

The vision for the school is to create a pool of nanoscientists sufficiently trained to conduct nanoscience research. The theme for 2011 is Nanoscience Characterisation Techniques.

Indigenous Knowledge System (IKS)

The indigenous knowledge of many communities embodies a deeply spiritualised and ancient relationship with the Earth's systems and cycles.

The National Recordal System is the largest fingerprint initiative of the region to document and record indigenous knowledge.

Two indigenous knowledge research chairs have been awarded as part of the South African Research Chairs Initiative. The first was awarded to the University of KwaZulu-Natal for work in the field of traditional medicines. The second has been awarded to Walter Sisulu University. These two chairs represent significant injections into the development of national research capacity in IKS.

The Department of Science and Technology also established indigenous knowledge studies centres of excellence at the universities.

The centres will play a defining role in generating highly qualified HR capacity in IKS.

Biotechnology

South Africa's research institutions and universities are conducting biotechnology research to increase production of crops suited to local conditions, enhance crop nutritional value, and improve preservation and processing methods resulting in novel and improved food products.

Research is being conducted on understanding the nutritional components of food indigenous to South Africa, with the aim of making those with a high nutritional value available and accessible to the majority of people.

South Africa is classified as one of the 14 mega biotech countries in the world, and the only one in Africa. These countries, including South Africa, have a special responsibility to ensure that the potential impacts of genetically modified organisms on human or animal health; on the environment; together with their probable socio-economic impact, are carefully measured, assessed and estimated before they are released. A favourable risk-benefit ratio can only be ensured in this way.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12 **SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY**

The Centurion Aerospace Village (CAV) was launched in November 2011. It is an initiative by the Department of Trade and Industry to develop a high-tech and advanced manufacturing aero-mechanical and defence cluster adjacent to the Waterkloof Air Force Base in Centurion.



While its primary aim is to integrate local aerospace and defence companies into the global supply chains to become suppliers of choice to original equipment manufacturers such as Boeing, Airbus and Spirit Aviation, the CAV will also be home to new process technologies within the aerospace sector.

Supporting innovators Technology Innovation Agency (TIA)

TIA was formed from a merger of seven organisations funded by the Department of Science and Technology, including the Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy, Bio-technology Partnerships and Development, Cape Biotech, Innovation Fund, LIFElab, PlantBio and Tshumisano, and is mandated to stimulate and intensify technological innovation to improve economic growth and the quality of life of all South Africans.

The Department of Science and Technology intends to create an institutional and policy framework that advances and sustains a coordinated and responsive National System of Innovation. TIA is the key agency in this regard.

By June 2011, about 26 investments had been identified; 11 had a very strong likelihood of enhancing job creation and socio-economic development; 11 others had proceeded beyond proof of concept stage; and four were ready for commercialisation.

In 2011, R433 million was allocated to the TIA.

National Advisory Council on Innovation (Naci)

The Naci Act, 1997 mandates the council to advise the Minister of Science and Technology, and through him/her the Cabinet, on the role and contribution of innovation (including S&T) in promoting and achieving national objectives.

In November 2011, the Department of Science Technology, the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC's) Centre for Science, Technology and Innovation Indicators, and the Naci hosted a workshop on measuring and monitoring innovation in South Africa. The purpose was to review the scope and

objectives of the South African Innovation Survey and to evaluate other indicators that need to be monitored to better inform policy-making in this area.

South African National Space Agency

Sansa is mandated by the Sansa Act, 2008 to promote the peaceful use of space, foster international cooperation in space-related activities and create an environment conducive to industrial development in space technology through research, human capital development, outreach programmes and infrastructure development.

National research facilities

The NRF manages South Africa's national research facilities. It promotes and supports basic and applied research. The NRF oversees the following national research facilities:

- South African Astronomical Observatory
- Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory
- Hermanus Magnetic Observatory
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity
- South African Environmental Observation Network
- National Zoological Gardens
- iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences.

Science councils

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC's functions are carried out through 11 research institutes whose activities are grouped under five divisions:

- field crops (grain and industrial crops)
- horticulture
- animal production and health
- natural resources and engineering
- technology transfer.

The ARC is also responsible for maintaining national assets and undertaking programmes or rendering services that are required from time to time by the department and other stakeholders.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

The CSIR is one of the leading S&T, R&D and implementation organisations in Africa, with its main site in Pretoria. The

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12 **SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY**

organisation is represented in other provinces of South Africa through regional offices. In 2011/12, R687 million was allocated to the CSIR.

Mintek

Mintek, South Africa's national mineral-research organisation, is one of the world's leading technology organisations specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas.

Collaborating with industry and other R&D institutions, Mintek provides service testwork, process development, consulting and innovative products to clients worldwide.

The Department of Mineral Resources granted Mintek R90 million over the 2011/14 period for the rehabilitation of derelict and ownerless mines in South Africa.

Human Sciences Research Council

The core business of the HSRC is to conduct large-scale, policy-relevant, social-scientific projects for public-sector users, non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and international development agencies. This is done in partnership with researchers globally, but specifically in Africa. In 2010/11, the HSRC undertook more than 150 projects and an assortment of initiatives.

Medical Research Council (MRC)

The MRC was established in July 1969 as an independent statutory body to coordinate health and medical research activities throughout South Africa, operating as a statutory science council functioning within the ambit of the MRC Act, 1991, as well as the Public Entities Act, 1997.

South Africa's Prof. Malegapuru Makgoba was elected vice-president of the International Council for Science (ICSU) in October 2011. Makgoba is a trained physician and an internationally recognised molecular immunologist. He will serve as vice-president for three years, while continuing to serve as vice-chancellor of the University of KwaZulu-Natal. Makgoba was also the recipient of the 2011 National Research Foundation President's Lifetime Achievement Award.



Council of Geoscience (CGS)

The CGS supplies the country with geoscience data to establish a safe and cost-effective physical infrastructure.

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS produces, maintains and disseminates standards. It promotes standardisation in business and government, and administers compulsory standards on behalf of the State. It also certifies international quality standards.

Other important research bodies and areas

National Institute for Tropical Diseases

The National Institute for Tropical Diseases in Tzaneen, Limpopo, is responsible for the ongoing assessment of malaria-control programmes carried out by various authorities in South Africa.

Control methods are assessed and recommendations made to the appropriate authorities regarding equipment, insecticide usage and application. A malaria-reference service is also provided. Malaria tests are carried out by the institute and statistical analyses of data pertaining to the programme are undertaken.

In September 2011, the National Research Foundation (NRF) announced the recipients of the NRF President's Awards 2011, which honour the career achievements of rated researchers acknowledged by their peers as world leaders in their fields.

The following researchers received A-ratings:

- Prof. Frank Brombacher (University of Cape Town [UCT])
- Prof. David Glasser (University of the Witwatersrand [Wits])
- Prof. Shabir Madhi (Wits)
- Prof. John Pettifor (Wits)
- Prof. Lyn Wadley (Wits)
- Prof. George Janelidze (UCT)
- Prof. Alan Weinberg (University of South Africa).

Other awards included:

- Lifetime Achievement Award: Prof. Malegapuru W Makgoba (University of KwaZulu-Natal)
- Transformation of the Science Cohort Award: Prof. Bongani M Mayosi (UCT)
- Champions of Transformation Capacity Development at South African Higher Education Institutions Award: Prof. Yusef Waghid (Stellenbosch University).



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12 **SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY**

Mine-safety research

The activities of the Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee are aimed at advancing the safety of workers employed in South African mines. The committee is a statutory tripartite subcommittee of the Mine Health and Safety Council. It has a permanent research-management office managing the rock engineering, engineering and mine occupational health fields of research.

Energy research

South Africa's National Energy Research Institute (Saneri) is the public entity entrusted with the coordination and undertaking of public interest energy research, development and demonstration. Saneri was established in October 2004 as a subsidiary of the Central Energy Fund (Pty) Ltd, the state energy company in South Africa.

Agricultural research

The ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations conduct agricultural research.

Water research

Water research in South Africa is coordinated and funded by the Water Research Commission in Pretoria.

The organisation's most active partners in water research are:

- universities and universities of technology
- professional consultants
- science councils
- water and waste utilities
- NGOs.

Coastal and marine research

The NRF supports marine and coastal research in partnership with the Department of Environmental Affairs and the South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research. The Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management advises on the use of marine living resources and the conservation of marine ecosystems, by conducting and supporting relevant multidisciplinary scientific research and by monitoring the marine environment.

Sustainable use and the need to preserve future options in using marine ecosystems and their resources are guiding objectives in the research and advice provided by the chief directorate.

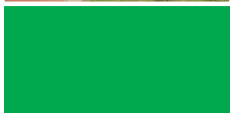
Environmental research

The Department of Environmental Affairs annually finances several research and monitoring programmes.

The programmes focus on, among other things, waste management and pollution, nature conservation, river management, the coastline and marine environment, and the atmosphere.



POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



HUMAN SETTLEMENTS

HUMAN SETTLEMENTS

The Department of Human Settlements determines, finances, promotes, communicates and monitors the implementation of housing and sanitation programmes in South Africa.

Government has set itself the target of making a positive impact on the quality of life of 500 000 households by 2014, by upgrading informal settlements. The upgrade will provide households with security of tenure and access to essential services in sites that are close to economic and other social amenities.

To meet its objective of sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life, the Department of Human Settlements has identified the following areas of priority:

- accelerated delivery of housing opportunities
- access to basic services
- more efficient land use
- an improved property market.

Between 1994 and June 2011, government built over three million homes for South Africans, giving shelter to over 13 million people.

Sustainable human settlements

By June 2011, the formalisation of 206 informal settlements had been completed. Of the 2 700 informal settlements

In terms of government's 12 outcomes, the Department of Human Settlements contributes directly to sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life (Outcome 8).



To accelerate the delivery of basic services and housing opportunities, and improve access to the property market, the Department of Human Settlements, together with provinces and municipalities, will focus on the following outputs over the medium term:

- upgrading 400 000 units of accommodation within informal settlements
- improving access to basic services by providing universal access to sanitation
- facilitating the provision of 80 000 affordable social and rental housing units of accommodation in well-located areas
- facilitating the provision of improved housing finance opportunities for 600 000 households within the gap market for people earning between R3 500 and R12 800
- releasing 6 250 ha of public-owned land for housing development.

countrywide, 1 100 of had been identified for upgrading and a further 335 targeted for formalisation.

Cabinet approved the Comprehensive Housing Plan (CHP) for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements (Breaking New Ground [BNG]) that aims, among other things, to eradicate informal settlements in South Africa in the shortest possible time.

The BNG incorporates principles such as the:

- integration of subsidised, rental and bonded housing
- provision of engineering services at a higher level than many other townships, and applied consistently throughout the township
- provision of ancillary facilities such as schools, clinics and commercial opportunities.

As part of the CHP, government provides a 40-m² house with two bedrooms; a separate bathroom with a toilet, shower and handbasin; a combined living area and kitchen with a washbasin; and a ready board electrical installation where electricity supply is available in the township, to qualifying households earning less than R3 500 a month.

Rental housing for the poor

Government plans to build 220 000 housing units in each financial year between 2011 and 2014. By the start of 2011/12, more than 8 000 human-settlement projects were already underway across the country.

The Housing Development Agency is fully operational, with the sole mandate to acquire land on behalf of government for human settlement. The target is to acquire 6 025 ha of land by 2014. This will provide for 500 000 housing units.

The National Upgrading Support Programme has also been established and is expected to help municipalities with upgrading projects. In addition, the Department of Human Settlements has reached an agreement with the country's major banks to form a joint working team to explore aspects of housing finance.

The National Rental Housing Strategy, which was approved in 2008, provides for people in the low-income bracket who may live in housing stock arising out of:

- provision made by previous departments
- public-sector hostels for housing migratory labour in the previous dispensation

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

HUMAN SETTLEMENTS

- municipal rental stock that has not been transferred to the households who inhabit the units, and which will continue to be used as rental accommodation because of the low economic status of the households
- new high-rise housing stock to be built for the specific purpose of accommodating low-income households in rental accommodation.

Many job seekers in urban areas require rental accommodation. There has been an increased demand for affordable and well-located rental accommodation. The Department of Human Settlements has developed a project pipeline with a mix of public-private sector rental stock, including the:

- Umlazi Community Rental Unit (CRU) Programme in KwaZulu-Natal
- Brooklyn Social Housing Programme in Cape Town
- Amalinda Institutional Housing Subsidy in Buffalo City, East London
- Cavendish Inner-City Private-Sector Rental in Johannesburg
- Zola Township Small-Scale Private Rental Stock for backyard dwellers in Gauteng.

All of these are aimed at creating 80 000 rental opportunities by 2014.

The CRU Programme replaces the National Hostel Redevelopment Programme and the proposed Affordable Rental Housing Programme.

There are approximately 2 000 public hostels that need to be addressed by government. There are also 200 000 residential units owned by provinces and municipalities. The programme provides a coherent framework for dealing with the many different forms of existing public-sector residential accommodation.

The CRU Programme aims to facilitate the provision of secure, stable rental tenure for lower-income individuals. The programme targets low-income individuals and households earning between R800 and R3 500 a month, who are unable to enter the formal private rental and social housing market.

More single women are buying homes in South Africa, with the number rising significantly over the last four years. According to mortgage company Ooba, the ratio of women to men in single-person home-loan applications increased from 36,53% in January 2007 to 46,94% in 2011. Single-person applications made up 49,65% of applications, compared to joint applications.



In September 2011, the Department of Human Settlements introduced Mortgage Default Insurance. This ensures that home owners have shelter if they default on their repayments. It also assures financiers and bond lenders of returns in such a situation.



This is an example of a product tailor-made to take care of the housing finance needs of low- to middle-income households that may be overlooked by banks.

The CRU Programme covers:

- public hostels owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities
- “grey” hostels that have both private and public ownership
- public housing stock that cannot be transferred and has to be managed as rental accommodation
- post-1994 newly developed public residential accommodation owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities
- dilapidated, derelict and dysfunctional buildings.

Housing institutions

The department’s support institutions play an important role in enhancing the norms and standards of housing, and making housing more accessible to all South Africans. They also facilitate the specific housing and housing-related needs of the market, in addition to the role provincial governments and municipalities play.

The institutions are the National Home Builders Registration Council, National Housing Finance Corporation, National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency, Rural Housing Loan Fund, Housing Development Agency and Social Housing Regulatory Authority.

Subsidies

A housing subsidy is a grant by government to qualifying beneficiaries for housing purposes. The subsidy is either paid to a seller of a house or, in new developments, the subsidy is used to finance the construction of a house that complies with the ministerial minimum norms and standards. The house is then transferred to the qualifying beneficiary.

One of the Department of Human Settlements’ areas of responsibility relates to the bottom-most end of the market, where it provides housing subsidies to the poor. This is where

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

HUMAN SETTLEMENTS

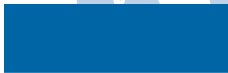
the bulk of the housing backlog exists, affecting mainly those who earn below R3 500 a month.

The amount allocated to grants for the poor in 2010/11 totalled R15 billion, rising to R17,9 billion in 2013/14.

The following subsidies exist:

- Consolidation Subsidy
- Individual Subsidy
- Integrated Residential Development Programme
- Institutional Subsidy
- Discount Benefit Scheme
- rural subsidies
- subsidies for people with disabilities
- People's Housing Process
- farm resident subsidies
- Finance-Linked Subsidy Programme.

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



POLICE, DEFENCE AND INTELLIGENCE

POLICE, DEFENCE AND INTELLIGENCE

In October 2010, the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster (JCPS) ministers signed a delivery agreement with President Jacob Zuma. It signified the cluster's undertaking to embark on a prioritised Programme of Action towards making South Africa safe for all and attractive to visitors and investors.

The JCPS Cluster aims to have a stable, safe and thriving democratic dispensation. It is charged with ensuring that the relevant defence, police and correctional mechanisms are in place and work efficiently and effectively.

The mandate of the South African Police Service (SAPS) is derived from the Constitution. The objectives of policing are:

- preventing, combating and investigating crime
- maintaining public order
- protecting and securing the inhabitants of South Africa and their property
- upholding and enforcing the law.

The policy documents governing policing in South Africa include the SAPS Act, 1995 and the 1996 National Crime-Prevention Strategy.

The SAPS' Strategic Plan provides a clear framework for personnel to focus their efforts during a five-year period. It also provides the community with information on the direction of policing during this period. The department's Strategic Plan for 2010 to 2014 lays down key operational priorities for the medium term, namely:

- crime prevention
- effective crime investigation
- supporting the investigation of crime
- crime intelligence.

Reducing crime

Crime prevention in South Africa is based on the principles of community policing; that is, partnerships between the community and the SAPS. Partnerships between police officers (who are appointed as sector managers) and communities strengthen existing community policing forums (CPFs), which have been in place since 1993. By the end of March 2011, 1 118 functioning CPFs had been established at police stations, including the 169 high-contact crime stations.

As part of cooperative police-community relations, reservists are being used to support the SAPS in combating crime. The reservist system provides for the active involvement of

the community in policing and supports a solution-oriented approach.

In support of the recruitment of qualifying reservists as permanent members of the SAPS, 1 245 reservists were appointed in terms of the SAPS Act, 1995 and 332 in terms of the Public Service Act, 1994.

By March 2011, the Reserve Police Force stood at 64 360 reservists. A 2010/11 audit revealed that only 26 259 were considered active reservists, performing at least 16 hours of duty per month. In 2010/11, 2 532 reservists were trained.

Sector policing is an operational policing tool adopted in terms of the SAPS' community policing approach. It provides for practical policing practices to complement community participation in accordance with policing needs and community requirements, and links to CPFs.

By March 2011, sector policing had been rolled out to 986 police stations countrywide.

The SAPS contributes to various social-crime prevention initiatives relating to the Anti-Rape Strategy, the Domestic Violence Programme, youth crime-prevention capacity-building programmes, violence-prevention programmes, the Victim-Empowerment Programme and community-based crime-prevention projects.

Fighting crime

In September 2011, crime statistics for the 2010/11 financial year were released:

The levels of "contact crimes" in South Africa had decreased by 6,9%. All seven categories of contact crime with reference to murder, attempted murder, sexual offences and assault with serious grievous bodily harm, common assault, aggravated robbery and common robbery, recorded a decline.

Murder was down by 6,5% and sexual offences by 3,1%. Assault with intent to inflict grievous bodily harm dropped

In 2010/11, 29 891 integrated law-enforcement operations were conducted, focusing on a number of priority areas to address the incidence of priority crime (contact crime, contact-related crime, crimes dependent on police action for detection, property-related and other serious crime).

These operations included 65 381 roadblocks and 2 063 923 stop-and-search operations. More than 1,4 million arrests were made, which included 688 937 arrests for priority crime.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

POLICE, DEFENCE AND INTELLIGENCE

by 4,5%, while robbery with aggravating circumstances decreased by 12%.

There was an increase of 3,5% in drunken-driving cases. In house robberies, 16 889 cases were reported, compared to the 18 786 reported in 2009/10. This was a decrease of 10,1%.

The police reported a 23,6% decrease in car hijacking and a 29,2% decrease in truck hijacking, with 413 cases reported.

One of the biggest improvements noted in the crime statistics for 2010/11 was a significant decline in bank robberies. They decreased by 58,1%, with 39 cases recorded in 2010/11, as opposed to the 93 cases recorded in 2009/10.

Forensic Science Services (FSS) and Criminal Record Centre (CRC)

The function of the CRC is primarily to provide previous conviction reports to courts, while the FSS provides scientific support in the investigation of crime.

It also identifies and confirms any previous convictions of suspects in crimes being investigated by the SAPS.

Various technologies have been implemented in the forensic-science environment, including the national Integrated Ballistics Identification System (IBIS) database. This has improved case turnaround time and examination quality. The Genetic Sample Processing System has increased the capacity to process more DNA-related entries. A three-dimensional correlation system has been implemented as part of the IBIS, and has improved the accuracy of firearms identification.

During 2010/11, the CRC received 1 206 333 crime-related fingerprint enquiries for possible identification and/or confirmation compared to 1 181 797 in 2009/10. Of the enquiries received, 595 707 (49,4%) resulted in previous convictions being identified and/or confirmed.

In total, 1 163 209 commercial/non-criminal-related enquiries were received. These enquiries are made to

During 2010/11, 10 additional victim-support rooms (VSRs) were established, bringing the number of functioning VSRs to 900. These facilities are used for the consultation of victims of sexual offences, child abuse and domestic violence; interviews; and statement-taking.



determine whether or not persons applying for, among other things, firearm licences, professional drivers' permits and employment have any previous convictions.

Upgrading the Automated Fingerprint Identification System has resulted in a faster response time, allowing for search results to be returned faster to the remote sites. It completes between 11 000 and 12 000 searches in a 15-hour period, compared to the previous 8 750 searches in a 22-hour period.

Detective Service

The Detective Service is responsible for maintaining an effective crime-investigation service.

Visible policing

The crime-combating capacity within the SAPS deals with the combating of crime and the maintenance of public order.

Visible Policing is responsible for providing a proactive and reactive policing service. It is regarded as a line function and its components are Social-Crime Prevention, Crime Prevention, Police Emergency Services, Specialised Operations, Borderline Operations and Crime-Combating Operations.

It is also responsible for combating crime through anti-crime operations, activities at police stations, maintaining high visibility and the availability of police officials at grassroots level. It also oversees sector policing, reservists, municipal police services and closed-circuit television surveillance.

Social Crime Prevention deals with crimes affecting the social fabric of society, including crimes against women and children.

The Police Emergency Services responds to crimes in progress, and provides dog and mounted services. Hostage and suicide negotiators, police drivers and uniformed units such as the 10111 emergency centres and the Flying Squad provide specialised services.

Between 1 April 2010 and 31 March 2011, the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation arrested 8 294 people and secured 5 267 convictions. In organised crime, they arrested 2 439 people and secured 532 convictions. The directorate profiled and pursued the 50 most wanted suspects for armed robberies, automatic teller machine bombings and cash-in-transit and bank robberies; and apprehended 49 suspects.



POLICE, DEFENCE AND INTELLIGENCE

The Police Emergency Services is also responsible for optimising the Integrated Crime-Prevention Road Policing Strategy, which aims to improve safety and order in the road environment by preventing and combating criminality and lawlessness.

The division eradicates the proliferation of firearms for use in crime and violence in South Africa. The component also ensures compliance with and effective enforcement of liquor-control legislation to address serious, violent and contact crime in South Africa.

To address the proliferation of firearms, a total of 19 357 firearms and 255 924 rounds of ammunition were recovered during day-to-day and special operations. Over 10 260 arrests were made for illegal possession of firearms during law-enforcement operations.

Specialised Operations provides a rapid-response capacity for intervening in extreme situations where normal policing is ineffective, including combating public violence; stabilising serious and violent crime incidents; policing public gatherings; rendering specialised operational support (including the Air Wing and Special Task Force); and handling high-risk operations.

Defence

The Department of Defence defends and protects the Republic of South Africa, its territorial integrity and its people.

The department, under the auspices of the New Partnership for Africa's Development, participates in various initiatives to secure peace and stability on the continent.

The South African National Defence Force (SANDF) is an all-volunteer force consisting of a regular core force and a reserve force. In addition to military matters, the Department of Defence is involved in search-and-rescue operations, hydrography and securing national key points.

Uniformed members of the SANDF have the right to join trade unions, but may not go on strike or picket.

Peace support

The promotion of peace and security is one of South Africa's most important objectives. This includes strengthening the region's conflict-prevention and resolution capabilities, rendering assistance in monitoring and addressing domestic issues that affect stability.

South Africa remains a significant actor and a major contributor to peacekeeping operations on the continent and elsewhere in the world.

In 2011/12, the SANDF deployed 2 240 military personnel in operations across the African continent: the Democratic Republic of Congo (1 290 personnel), Darfur (850 personnel) and the Central African Republic (100 personnel). These deployments are tasked with restoring peace, training and formalising and developing the security structures of those countries to stabilise and facilitate economic growth and a better life for the citizens.

Military veterans

The Department of Military Veterans was proclaimed by the President as a separate and stand-alone department, in December 2009, to create a department within government, whose sole responsibility is to govern and cater for the affairs of all former members of military organisations before the dawn of democracy and those who served in the SANDF after 1994.

Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armcor)

Armcor is a statutory body established in accordance with the Armcor Limited Act, 2003. The Minister of Defence is the executive authority responsible for Armcor. The management and control of Armcor reside with a board of directors, while its day-to-day management vests in the hands of the management board.

In executing its functions, Armcor maintains capabilities and technologies that are required to fulfil its mandate.

These include appropriate programme-management systems, the Defence Industrial Participation Programme

The South African National Defence Force (SANDF) and the South African National Parks (SANparks) have reached an agreement to patrol the borders inside the national parks. From April 2011, the SANDF moved to the second phase and is now deployed in the pivotal area of the Kruger National Park border. The SANDF and SANparks cooperate in protecting all national parks. The cooperation includes joint operations, sharing of information and training.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

POLICE, DEFENCE AND INTELLIGENCE

During July and August 2011, the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) and United States of America (USA) Armed Forces jointly conducted a multinational peace-support operation and humanitarian relief exercise. Exercise Shared Accord 2011 (Ex Shared Accord 11) took place at Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality and in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape.



The aim of Ex Shared Accord 11 was to provide collective training for the SANDF and US Armed Forces, and building interoperability and mutual understanding between the two forces. All services of the SANDF were involved in the operation.

Ex Shared Accord is an annual, combined, bilateral USA-partner nation event. Previous Ex Shared Accord 11 exercises were hosted in Benin, Ghana, Senegal and Mozambique.

and the management of technology projects and strategic facilities.

Armcor acquires defence material for the Department of Defence and, with the approval of the Minister of Defence, for any organ of state, public entities and any sovereign state that may require such services.

Denel Group of South Africa

Denel (Pty) Ltd is a commercially driven holding company, with equity of varying degrees in several defence and aerospace subsidiaries and associated companies.

With its focus on the military aerospace and landward defence domains, Denel was incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the Companies Act, 1973. Its defence capabilities, however, date back more than 70 years when some of Denel's first manufacturing plants were established.

Apart from being original equipment manufacturers in certain product categories, the Denel businesses are also engaged in the overhaul, maintenance, repair, refurbishment and upgrade of the SANDF's defence systems and equipment.

Intelligence services

In September 2009, after a review process, a single department, the State Security Agency (SSA), was established by a presidential proclamation, bringing together the following components:

The Protection of Information Bill, which was passed by the National Assembly in November 2011, aims to, among other things, address the rising threat of undercover activities, the selling of information and the protection of critical databases in government, without impeding the constitutional rights of citizens to accessing information.



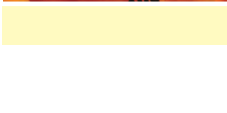
- the former National Intelligence Agency, which is now the Domestic Branch of the SSA
- the former South African Secret Service, which is now the Foreign Branch
- the former South African National Academy of Intelligence, which is now the Intelligence Academy
- National Communications, which comprises the following former structures: the National Communications Centre, Office for Interception Centres and Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd.

The SSA focuses on matters of national interest, namely:

- terrorism
- sabotage
- subversion
- espionage
- organised crime.



POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



**JUSTICE AND
CORRECTIONAL SERVICES**

JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL SERVICES

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's mandate is to uphold and protect the Constitution and the rule of law. The department is also responsible for overseeing the administration of justice in the interests of a safer and more secure South Africa.

The courts

Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court, situated in Johannesburg, is the highest court in all constitutional matters. It is the only court that may adjudicate disputes between organs of state in the national or provincial sphere concerning the constitutional status, powers or functions of any of those organs of state, or that may decide on the constitutionality of any amendment to the Constitution or any parliamentary or provincial Bill.

The Constitutional Court makes the final decision on whether an Act of Parliament, a provincial Act or the conduct of the President is constitutional. It consists of the Chief Justice of South Africa, the Deputy Chief Justice and nine Constitutional Court judges.

In September 2011, Justice Mogoeng Mogoeng was appointed Chief Justice.

Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA)

The SCA, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, is the highest court in respect of all other matters other than constitutional matters. It consists of the president and deputy president of the SCA, and 23 other judges of appeal. The SCA has jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal against any decision of a high court. Justice Lex Mpati is the president of the SCA.

Decisions of the SCA are binding on all courts of a lower order, and the decisions of high courts are binding on magistrates' courts within the respective areas of jurisdiction of the divisions.

High courts

A high court has jurisdiction in its own area over all persons residing or present in that area.

These courts hear matters that are of such a serious nature that the lower courts would not be competent to make an appropriate judgment or to impose a penalty. Except where

a minimum or maximum sentence is prescribed by law, their penal jurisdiction is unlimited and includes handing down a sentence of life imprisonment in certain specified cases

There are 13 high courts: the Eastern Cape High Court, Grahamstown; the Eastern Cape High Court, Port Elizabeth; the Eastern Cape High Court, Mthatha; the Eastern Cape High Court, Bhisho; the Free State High Court, Bloemfontein; the North Gauteng High Court, Pretoria; the South Gauteng High Court, Johannesburg; the KwaZulu-Natal High Court, Pietermaritzburg; KwaZulu-Natal High Court, Durban; the Limpopo High Court, Thohoyandou; the Northern Cape High Court, Kimberley; the North West High Court, Mafikeng; and the Western Cape High Court, Cape Town.

Regional courts

Regional courts are established largely in accordance with provincial boundaries with a regional court division for each province to hear matters within their jurisdiction. There are nine regional court presidents and 351 regional court magistrates.

The regional courts by virtue of the Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008, adjudicate civil disputes. The Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development, with effect from August 2010, established a court for each regional division for the purposes of adjudicating civil disputes. In addition, the Minister appointed within each regional division the places (64 in total) of holding court for adjudicating civil disputes. The divorce courts were subsumed under the regional-court divisions. The divorce court rules made under Section 10(4) of the Administration Amendment Act, 1929 were repealed from 15 October 2010. The regional courts therefore started adjudicating divorce matters from 15 October 2010. This has addressed the jurisdictional challenges in terms of which litigants have to travel to remote courts to get legal redress.

Magistrates' courts

The Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development may divide the country into magisterial districts and create regional divisions consisting of districts.

The country is divided into 384 magisterial districts (18 subdistricts), 384 main magistrates' offices (18 detached

courts), 79 branch courts and 235 periodical courts. The magisterial districts are still informed by the pre-1994 demarcations of the defunct self-governing states and the Republic of South Africa territory. Processes are underway to align the magisterial districts in accordance with the constitutional dispensation.

Small claims courts

A commissioner in the Small Claims Court hears cases involving civil claims not exceeding R12 000.

By March 2012, there were 240 such courts across the country. The commissioner is usually a practising advocate or attorney, a legal academic or another competent person who offers his or her services free of charge. Neither the plaintiff nor the defendant may be represented or assisted by counsel at the hearing. There is no appeal to a higher court.

In 2010, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development appointed 229 commissions and 217 advisory boards to assist small claims courts.

Equality courts

Any person who has been unfairly discriminated against in terms of Section Nine of the Constitution may approach the Equality Court.

Community courts

Community courts, like the Hatfield Community Court in Pretoria, are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the community and business. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

Thirteen community courts have been established. Four have been formally launched and are fully operational in Hatfield (Pretoria), Fezeka (Gugulethu), Mitchell's Plain and Cape Town. Another nine pilot sites commenced in Durban (Point), KwaMashu, Mthatha, Bloemfontein, Thohoyandou, Kimberley, Phuthaditjaba, Hillbrow and Protea (Lenasia).

Courts for income-tax offenders

In October 1999, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) opened a criminal courtroom at the Johannesburg Magistrate's Office dedicated to the prosecution of tax offenders. The court

deals only with cases concerning failure to submit tax returns or failure to provide information requested by Sars officials. It does not deal with bigger cases such as tax fraud.

Traditional courts

There are traditional courts (formerly chiefs' courts) established at traditional community areas in rural villages. The judicial functions of traditional leaders are regulated in terms of sections 12 and 20 and the Third Schedule of the repealed Black Administration Act (BAA), 1927.

The BAA, 1927 was repealed by the Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Act, 2005.

Special Investigating Unit (SIU)

The SIU, created in terms of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996, is an independent statutory body that is directly accountable to Parliament and the President of South Africa. It was established to conduct investigations at the President's request, and to report on the outcomes thereof. The SIU functions like a commission of inquiry, in that the President refers cases to it by way of a proclamation. It may investigate any matter set out in Section Two of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996.

By December 2011, the SIU had almost 1 000 individual investigations underway. Of these, nearly 600 were related to procurement, while 360 conflicts of interest on contracts valued at R3,5 billion were also under investigation.

National Prosecuting Authority (NPA)

The NPA structure includes the National Prosecution Service (NPS), the Witness-Protection Programme, the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU) and units such as the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (Soca) Unit, the Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU) and the Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU).

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU was created in 1999 in terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998. The AFU can seize and forfeit property that was bought from the proceeds of crime, or property that was used to commit a crime.

The AFU has two major strategic objectives, namely to:

- develop the law by taking test cases to court
- create the legal precedents necessary to allow for the effective use of the law.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

Soca acts against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. The unit develops strategy and policy, and oversees the management of cases relating to sexual offences, domestic violence, human trafficking, maintenance offences and children in conflict with the law.

Soca aims to:

- improve the conviction rate in gender-based crimes and crimes against children
- protect vulnerable groups from abuse and violence
- ensure access to maintenance support
- reduce secondary victimisation.

One of the unit's key achievements in ensuring government's commitment to the fight against sexual offences and gender-based violence is the establishment of Thuthuzela care centres (TCCs).

The TCC concept is recognised by the United Nations General Assembly as a "world best-practice model" in the field of gender-violence management and response. The TCCs are one-stop facilities located in communities where the incidence of rape is particularly high.

TCCs aim to provide survivors with a broad range of essential services – from emergency medical-care counselling to court preparation – in a holistic, integrated and victim-friendly manner.

By December 2011, there were 27 fully operational TCCs in the country.

The Thuthuzela Project is supported by the roll-out of victim support rooms (VSRs) in an effort to show empathy to victims of violent crime, especially in cases of sexual offences, child abuse and domestic violence. In 2011, the department increased the number of VSRs from 806 to 900 across the country. These rooms are used for interviews, taking statements and other consultations.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

The PCLU is a specialist unit mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. The PCLU was created by presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the National Director. The primary function of the PCLU is to manage and direct investigations and prosecutions in respect of the following areas:

- the non-proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (nuclear, chemical and biological)
- the regulation of conventional military arms
- the regulation of mercenary and related activities
- the International Court created by the Statute of Rome
- national and international terrorism
- prosecutions of persons who were refused or failed to apply for amnesty in terms of the Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC) processes.

National Prosecution Service

The significant majority of the NPA's prosecutors are housed in the NPS, the organisation's biggest unit. The NPS is headed by a deputy national director who reports to the National Director of Public Prosecutions. A director of public prosecutions heads the organisation in each region, with public prosecutors and state advocates manning the nation's district, regional and high courts.

The NPA is "the people's lawyer", and thus represents and acts on behalf of the people in all criminal trials. The NPA does not seek only to secure convictions but rather to ensure that the interest of justice is served in all cases.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The SCCU aims to reduce commercial crime by the effective investigation and prosecution of complex commercial crime.

The SCCU's mandate is to accept responsibility for the investigation and prosecution of commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the South African Police Service in Pretoria and Johannesburg, respectively. The client base of the SCCU comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to state departments.

The transformation of the judiciary remains one of government's key priorities. Through the efforts of the Judicial Service Commission, by mid-2011, of the 226 permanent judges, 40,3% (91) were white, 40,7% (92) were African, 9,3% (21) were coloured and 9,7% (22) were Indian. Overall, 26,3% were female.



Significant strides have been made in respect of the magistracy. Through the efforts of the Magistrates' Commission, during the same period, of the 1 694 magistrates, 42,8% were white, 40,8% African, 7,6% coloured and 8,8% Indian. Overall, 37,6% were female.

Public Protector

The Public Protector investigates complaints from the public or on own initiative against government at any level, its officials, persons performing public functions, corporations or companies where the State and statutory councils are involved. The Public Protector's services are free and available to everyone.

Complainants' names are kept confidential as far as possible. The President appoints the Public Protector on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution, for a non-renewable period of seven years.

The Public Protector is subject only to the Constitution and the law, and functions independently from government and any political party.

No person or organ of state may interfere with the functioning of the Public Protector.

The Public Protector has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the Public Protector's recommendations are followed.

Victims' Charter

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime in South Africa and minimum standards for services for victims of crime are important instruments elaborating and consolidating rights and obligations relating to services applicable to victims and survivors of crime in the country.

The charter identifies the following rights of crime victims:

- to be treated with fairness, respect, dignity and privacy
- to offer information
- to receive information
- protection
- assistance

- compensation
- restitution.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission Unit

The TRC Unit was established in September 2005 to audit, monitor and coordinate government's implementation of the TRC recommendations.

The TRC Unit works closely with the President's Fund Office, which is located in the Office of the Chief Financial Officer in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. The President's Fund Office has been giving effect to the payment of both urgent interim and final reparations to the 16 837 victims who applied for reparations and were approved by the TRC.

The TRC identified 21 769 people as victims of human-rights violations. Of these, 16 837 applied for reparations.

By June 2011, 15 962 beneficiaries had been paid once-off grants of R30 000 as final reparation. These payments are made from the President's Fund, established in terms of Section 42 of the Promotion of National Unity and Reconciliation Act, 1995.

Correctional services

The Department of Correctional Services aims to contribute to a just, peaceful and safe society, by detaining inmates in safe custody, while maintaining their human dignity, developing their sense of social responsibility and promoting the general development of all inmates and persons subject to community corrections.

In March 2011, there were 162 162 inmates in 241 correctional service centres throughout the country. Of these, 158 400 were male and 3 762 were female.

There are two private prisons in South Africa. Of the 241 correctional centres, eight are for women, 13 are for the youth, 129 are for men and 91 are mixed (women and men). The average cost of incarceration per offender per day was estimated at R123,37.

Care and development of inmates

The department continues to improve the healthcare of inmates. The implementation of the occupation specific

dispensation for nurses will ensure availability of suitably qualified nurses to take care of the health of inmates and assist in the retention strategy in relation to nurses.

Two correctional centres, namely Boksburg and Krugersdorp, were accredited to provide antiretroviral treatment to HIV-positive offenders, bringing the total number of such facilities across the country to 21.

In partnership with the Department of Basic Education, the department has initiated an Early Childhood Development (ECD) programme for babies and toddlers who are incarcerated with their mothers. The programme recruits unemployed community members and parolees, and trains them as ECD practitioners. The ECD qualification empowers the beneficiaries with a qualification equivalent to National Qualification Framework levels four and five.

The Pre-Adult Basic Education and Training Programme, also in partnership with the Department of Basic Education, is a mass literacy campaign that involves illiterate offenders. Volunteers from the community are recruited and trained as literacy facilitators.

Eleven computer-based training centres for offenders were established. Computer-based training forms an integral part of the subject Life Orientation within the National Curriculum Statement for grades 10 to 12 as well as the National Curriculum Vocation. The department completed and implemented a national project to align presentation of the curricula with national requirements.

Fighting corruption

The department continues to win the war against fraud and corruption:

- the anti-fraud and corruption capacity of the department is rated as the third most efficient of 85 departments audited by the Department of Public Service and Administration
- the measures put in place resulted in an 89% conviction rate during the 2009/10 financial year
- R2,5 million was recovered from some R4,5 million in debt owed by officials who were found guilty of defrauding the department's medical aid scheme.

Inmates per crime category as on the last day of 2011/12

Total			
Crime Category	Unsentenced	Sentenced	Total
Economical	15 414	25 373	40 787
Aggressive	23 182	61 097	84 279
Sexual	6 927	18 033	24 960
Narcotics	1 707	2 717	4 424
Other	2 465	5 247	7 712
Total	49 695	112 467	162 162

Source: www.dcs.gov.za/WebStatistics/totcrime.aspx

INKUNDLA YOMGAQOSISEKO
INKANTOLO YOMTHETHOSISEKELO
KHOTO YA VUMBIWA
INKANTOLO YEMTSETFOSISEKELO
KGOROTSEKO YA MOLAOTHEO
INKHOTO YOMTHETHOSISEKELO
CONSTITUTIONAL COURT
LEKGOTLA LA DINYWE LA MOLAOTHEO
KHOTHE YA NDAYOTWEA
KONSTITUSIONELE HOF
KGOOTLA LA DINYWE LA MOLAOTHEO



POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

The Department of Social Development strives to enable the poor, vulnerable and the excluded within South African society to secure a better life for themselves.

Legislation

The Children's Act, 2005 provides for the establishment of the *National Child Protection Register* that lists all persons found unsuitable to work with children.

In terms of this law, childcare facilities, including welfare organisations offering foster care and adoption, are able to check prospective employees, foster parents and adoptive parents against the register.

The Older Persons Act, 2006 contains provisions to improve the lives of older South Africans.

The main objectives of the Act are to:

- maintain and promote the status, well-being, safety and security of older persons
- recognise the skills and wisdom of older persons
- encourage older persons' participation in community activities to promote them as people.

The amendment of the Social Assistance Act, 2004 saw men aged 63 to 64 for the first time qualifying and receiving social-assistance grants. The full implementation of the Act ensured that from 2010 men too receive social-assistance grants when they turn 60 years of age.

The Children's Amendment Act, 2007 provides for:

- the partial care of children
- early childhood development (ECD)

Grants per month, 2012/13

Grant type	Amount
State Old-Age Grant	R1 200
State Old-Age Grant (over 75)	R1 220
Disability Grant	R1 200
War Veterans Grant	R1 220
Foster Care Grant	R770
Care Dependency Grant	R1 200
Child-Support Grant	R280

Source: *People's Guide to the Budget*

- further protection of children
- prevention and early-intervention services
- children in alternative care
- foster care
- child- and youth-care centres, shelters and drop-in centres
- certain new offences relating to children
- the plight of child-headed households
- respect for parental rights by providing that no person may take or send a South African child out of the country without consent of parents or guardians
- the discipline of children.

Social assistance

The South African Social Security Agency (Sassa) provides social grants to over 15 million beneficiaries, and therefore bears the responsibility to ensure that only legitimate beneficiaries are on the system. To this end, Sassa has intensified mechanisms to reduce fraud and corruption within the social security system. The agency has started with the reregistration process of grant beneficiaries. Between April and the end of May 2012, Sassa managed to get all its cash beneficiaries on a limited biometric card swop. From 1 June 2012, Sassa is undertaking full reregistration of all social-grant beneficiaries, including babies, on a comprehensive biometric identification system.

Sassa disburses the following grants:

- older persons
- war veteran
- disability
- grant-in-aid
- care dependency
- foster child
- child support.

Social assistance and security fraud

The Department of Social Development's national facilities to combat fraud and corruption in the social-security system consist of:

- a free-call fax-service number (0800 61 10 11) that operates 24 hours a day, seven days a week
- an e-mail address (*fraud@socdev.gov.za*).

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

Number of grant benefits by grant type and region as on 29 February 2012

Grant type	EC	FS	GAU	KZN	LIM	MPU	NW	NC	WC	TOTAL
Old Age	486 575	164 254	364 980	568 390	376 644	217 620	232 800	71 039	243 174	2 725 476
War Veteran	104	15	172	110	60	34	28	27	215	765
Disability	191 027	89 815	120 397	323 018	87 141	81 462	88 798	48 759	156 876	1 187 293
Grant-in-Aid	8 413	1 018	1 284	27 797	8 763	2 091	3 297	4 062	8 955	65 680
Care Dependency	18 181	5 299	14 083	34 700	11 165	7 834	8 682	4 210	9 853	114 007
Child Support	1 816 683	612 791	1 372 388	2 696 856	1 475 392	989 790	784 002	258 720	782 973	10 789 595
Foster Child	113 897	41 783	55 644	139 850	53 991	32 250	44 413	14 099	28 451	524 378
Total	2 634 880	914 975	1 928 948	3 790 721	2 013 156	1 331 081	1 162 020	400 916	1 230 497	15 407 194

Source: South African Social Security Agency

As part of the Anti-Corruption and Fraud Prevention Strategy, internal control systems have been improved and forensic and investigating teams deployed in all provinces.

Since its inception, the Sassa's collaboration with the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) has reduced fraud and corruption. From 2006, the SIU prosecuted 17 477 people for fraud and corruption relating to grants, including 2 828 people prosecuted in 2010/11. At 5 134, KwaZulu-Natal had the highest prosecutions. Over the five-year period, the SIU recovered R84 904 156, with R25 675 420 recovered during 2010/11. During this process, 6 368 people signed acknowledgments of debt.

War on poverty

The *War on Poverty* Campaign, which was first piloted in 2008/09, targets service delivery to poor households and monitors household progression out of extreme poverty. Government identified 1 128 of the most deprived municipal wards, where an estimated three million households comprising an estimated 15 million people live in extreme poverty. The campaign is being rolled out and it is planned that by 2014 all the identified wards will be covered.

As part of Child Protection Week (30 May to 4 June 2011) activities, the Minister of Social Development, Ms Bathabile Dlamini, officially launched the national *ECD Awareness* Campaign.

This annual campaign seeks to educate and inform parents, primary caregivers and communities about the importance of quality early learning for children. It also aims to increase the number of registered ECD centres and the number of children benefiting from their services. By March 2012, more than 800 000 children had benefited from ECD services.

The Department of Social Development's contributions to the development of children is one of the primary means to improve society's human capital and over time contribute to a reduction in intergenerational poverty.

Responding to the impact of HIV and AIDS

The department is playing a pivotal role in helping to realise government's vision of a long and healthy life for all South Africans. This will be achieved through social behaviour-change programmes and mitigating the social and economic impact of HIV and AIDS and other chronic illnesses.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

By 2014, the Department of Social Development aims to have recruited and trained 10 000 child- and youth-care workers to support child-headed families.



By July 2011, over 5 500 students had received scholarships to study social work at various higher learning institutions, with R244 million set aside to support 4 400 students and provide 1 000 new scholarships.

The scholarship programme produced over 2 000 graduates, who were absorbed in all nine provinces to bolster the provision of welfare services.

Some estimates project that the country needs 55 000 educated social workers.

By September 2011, there were 16 391 social workers employed by government and non-governmental organisations across the country to address welfare needs, ranging from prevention and treatment of substance abuse to crime prevention and HIV and AIDS support. Due to the shortage of social workers, the majority are expected to provide generic social work to any clients that require services.

The programmes aim to ensure that the department creates AIDS-competent communities and provide psycho-social support through the Home- and Community-Based Care (HCBC) Programme to those affected by and infected with HIV and AIDS.

In 2011, the department strengthened its monitoring and evaluation capacity. The results assisted in enhancing the capacity of communities to deal with HIV and AIDS by generating strategies that are community-driven, thereby placing communities at the centre of HIV and AIDS responses.

The department participates in the ongoing *HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT)* Campaign, ensuring that all people undergoing testing receive appropriate counselling and support.

Home- and community-based care (HCBC)

HCBC is one of the programmes selected to contribute to the social sector plan for the Expanded Public Works Programme. Community caregivers in HCBC organisations provide services to individuals, families and communities. A total of 19 895 community caregivers were trained in aspects such as succession planning; childcare forums; the Children's Act, 2005; psychosocial support, and monitoring

As part of Child Protection Week in May and June 2011, the Deputy Minister of Social Development, Ms Maria Ntuli, launched the *Children Services Directory*.



It is intended to serve as a resource to individuals, families, caregivers and organisations working with children in South Africa. It contains about 4 000 names and details of registered community-based organisations, faith-based organisations and government institutions that provide a wide range of services to children.

The directory contains information on available services for children from a number of organisations, including child-protection services. This directory will enable local organisations to identify other organisations working in the same field, thus opening up opportunities for partnerships with other organisations committed to meeting the needs of children.

and evaluation. More than 1 000 community caregivers were trained in psychosocial well-being.

A monitoring and evaluation system for HCBC was developed and implemented in 341 districts.

A computerised HCBC data-capturing system was developed and rolled out in North West, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo and the Northern Cape. This project was implemented in collaboration with the Department of Health, which acted as the lead department.

Guidelines for support groups and psychosocial support; for children and adults with HIV and AIDS and other chronic conditions were developed.

An audit of HCBC organisations was completed, and the existence of 2 000 organisations was verified.

Services to orphans made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS

The Department of Social Development provides care and support to orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS, and other circumstances. Childcare forums work hand-in-hand with social workers, welfare organisations and other structures in the community to ensure that the identified children get access to appropriate services.

The department has established a number of community-based drop-in centres where children are provided with meals and lunch boxes before they go to school. Caregivers at the drop-in centres also assist children from child-headed

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

households with homework and involve them in lifeskills programmes.

The Department of Social Development is developing a national database of orphans and vulnerable children (OVC), which will include child-headed households. The programmes to assist OVC include access to treatment, food, skills training and psychosocial support.

Children are assisted to apply for social grants they are entitled to, for example child-support and foster-care grants.

Community-based care services are rendered at drop-in centres or HCBC centres. The services include:

- provision of cooked meals and food parcels
- assistance with homework for children who are attending school
- recreation
- capacity-building on parenting and life skills
- psychosocial care and support
- income-generating programmes
- provision of ECD services.

Prevention and treatment of substance and drug abuse

Drug and alcohol abuse in South Africa is high. Estimates are that more than 2,2 million people use cannabis, followed by cocaine, heroin, ecstasy and other substances. Cabinet established the Inter-Ministerial Committee (IMC) on Social Security Reform tasked with addressing substance abuse-related issues in a coordinated and comprehensive manner. One of the key activities of this IMC was the hosting of the second Biennial Anti-Substance Abuse Summit in March 2011.

In December 2011, Minister Dlamini launched government's *Anti-Alcohol and Substance Abuse Campaign* in Cape Town. The campaign's theme is *Towards an Alcohol and Drug Abuse Free South Africa – Take a Stand*.

The launch follows the approval of a five-year programme of action on anti-alcohol and substance abuse by Cabinet in September 2011. Its aims are to:

- develop policy, review and align liquor registration
- educate and create awareness about substance abuse
- promote equal access to resources across South Africa

- respond to policies and legislation regarding drugs and organised crime
- review institutional mechanisms to prevent and manage alcohol and drug use in the country.

People with disabilities

South Africa was one of the first countries to sign and ratify the United Nations Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities in 2007.

As a developmental state, South Africa has made strides in improving access to health and social services for persons with disabilities. The free healthcare policy for people with disabilities includes the provision of assistive devices where needed.

In line with its mandate of mainstreaming and oversight, the Department for Women, Children and People with Disabilities ensures that each government department commits to clear milestones towards the attainment of 2% employment equity for people with disabilities, and be held accountable for this target.

National councils

The Department of Social Development strives to strengthen the capacity of civil society to engage actively in social and economic development, by supporting the following national councils:

- National Council for Persons with Physical Disabilities
- Deaf Federation of South Africa
- South African National Epilepsy League
- South African Federation for Mental Health
- Cancer Association of South Africa.

Statutory bodies include the National Development Agency (NDA), relief boards and the Central Drug Authority.

National Youth Development Agency (NYDA)

The NYDA, formally launched on 16 June 2009, resulted from the merger of the National Youth Commission and Umsobomvu Youth Fund.

As the primary custodian of youth development in the country, the NYDA's mandate is to:

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

- advance youth development through guidance and support to initiatives across sectors of society and spheres of government
- embark on initiatives that seek to advance the economic development of young people
- develop and coordinate the implementation of the Integrated Youth Development Plan and Strategy for the country.

By September 2011, some of the outcomes included:

- sustaining 61 341 employment opportunities
- training 49 341 young people in entrepreneurship
- training 84 205 young people in the National Youth Service Programme, thus promoting entrepreneurship and patriotism among the youth
- issuing 24 062 loans to young people valued at R60,4 million
- facilitating business opportunities for young people valued at R142,8 million
- providing information to over 1,5 million young people through various access points, including the call centre and its 144 local youth offices.

National Development Agency

The NDA is a statutory funding agency established in terms of the NDA Act, 1998 to contribute towards the alleviation of poverty, address its causes and strengthen the capacity of civil-society organisations to combat poverty.

The key strategic objectives of the NDA are, among other things, to grant funds to civil-society organisations to meet the development needs of poor communities; proactively strengthen organisations' institutional capacity for long-term sustainability; source funds for the NDA; and promote consultation, dialogue and the sharing of development experiences.

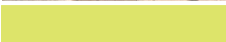
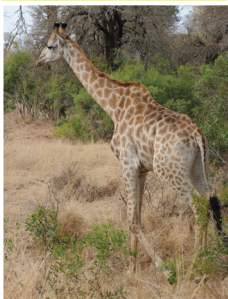
Non-profit organisations (NPOs)

The registration of NPOs remains a priority. By 2011, a total of 18 393 applications had been received and processed. Of these, 10 309 met the registration requirements.

Registered NPOs increased to 65 635, representing an increase of more than 14% since 2009.

NPOs have a major role to play in identifying, developing and implementing programmes and projects that promote social development.

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



ENVIRONMENT

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ENVIRONMENT

South Africa has a wide range of climatic conditions and many variations in topography, such as a narrow coastal plain, a steep escarpment and a large plateau.

The country is rich in diverse species. Though it has a land surface area of 1,2 million km² – representing just 2% of the Earth's total land surface – South Africa contains almost 10% of the world's total known bird, fish and plant species, and over 6% of the world's mammal and reptile species.

The vision of the Department of Environmental Affairs is to create a prosperous and equitable society living in harmony with the environment.

Government leads protection of the environment by example. At regional level, the provincial conservation agencies are major role players, and independent statutory organisations such as South African National Parks (SANParks) and the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi) are valuable partners in the country's total conservation effort.

South Africa has taken several concrete steps to implement the United Nations' (UN) Agenda 21 on Sustainable Development. These include reforming environmental policies, ratifying international agreements and participating in many global and regional sustainable-development initiatives.

Environmental heritage

South Africa became a signatory to the Nagoya Protocol on Access to Genetic Resources and the Fair and Equitable Sharing of Benefits Arising from their Utilisation to the

Important dates:

World Wetlands Day: 2 February
National Water Week: 19 to 25 March
Earth Day: 20 March
World Water Day: 22 March
World Meteorological Day: 23 March
World Environment Day: 5 June
World Oceans Day: 8 June
World Desertification Day: 17 June
National Arbour Week: 1 to 7 September
International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer: 16 September
World Tourism Day: 27 September
World Habitat Day: 4 October
National Marine Day: 20 October



South Africa, as a biodiversity-rich country, is committed to the conservation and sustainable management of biological resources, and is signatory to the following biodiversity-related multilateral agreements:



- Convention on Biological Diversity
- Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety
- Ramsar Convention
- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species
- Convention to Combat Desertification
- Convention on Migratory Species
- Nagoya Protocol.

Convention on Biological Diversity on 11 May 2011. South Africa is the third-most biologically diverse country in the world, after Indonesia and Brazil. These countries harbour most of the Earth's species and collectively contain more than two thirds of global biodiversity. Therefore, South Africa attaches great importance to the Nagoya Protocol.

South Africa occupies only 2% of the world's surface area but is home to nearly 10% of the world's plants (approximately 24 000 species), around 7% of the world's vertebrate species and 5,5% of the world's known insect species (only about half of the latter have been described).

In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians, South Africa ranks as the fifth-richest country in Africa and the 24th-richest in the world.

Marine biological diversity is also high. Over 11 000 species are found in South African waters, which is about 15% of global species, with more than 25% of these marine species (or 3 496 species) being endemic to South Africa. A high proportion are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

Three internationally recognised biodiversity hotspots are found in South Africa: the Cape Floral Kingdom (equivalent to the Fynbos Biome), Succulent Karoo Biome (shared with Namibia) and the Maputaland-Pondoland-Albany Centre of Plant Endemism, which stretches from the Albany Centre in the Eastern Cape, through the Pondoland Centre of Plant Endemism and KwaZulu-Natal, the eastern side of Swaziland and into southern Mozambique and Mpumalanga. The Succulent Karoo Biome is one of only two arid biodiversity hotspots in the world, the other being the Horn of Africa.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ENVIRONMENT

In May 2011, South Africa's Chelsea Flower Show entry, *Botanical Landscapes*, which highlighted the indigenous plants of the Western and Northern Cape, scooped the country's 31st gold medal at the prestigious event in London.



The display showed off South Africa's fynbos, and in particular the Richtersveld sector featured some rare plants from the Karoo, unseen before at Chelsea.

Biodiversity is protected and promoted through institutions and initiatives such as the:

- South African Biodiversity Facility
- South African Biosystematic Initiative
- South African Environmental Observation Network
- Biobank South Africa
- Sanbi.

Biomes

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa. These biomes can, in turn, be divided into 70 veld types.

The biomes are the Savanna, Nama-Karoo, Succulent Karoo, Grassland, Fynbos, Forest, Thicket and Desert. The Fynbos Biome is one of only six floral kingdoms worldwide.

Conservation areas

By mid-2011, South Africa had 528 protected areas, of which 20 were marine, totalling 7,5 million ha or 6,2% of the land area.

South Africa aims to expand the conservation areas under formal protection to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country. The Department of Environmental Affairs has developed mechanisms for the establishment and expansion of protected areas.

South Africa's third Butterfly Census Week took place from 23 April to 1 May 2011, as part of the Southern African Butterfly Conservation Assessment Project. It is hoped that this will become a regular biannual event to collect important information, which can be used to monitor the country's butterflies. This will help to understand the impact of land use and climate change and monitor ecosystem health.



National Geographic has named South Africa's Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden one of the world's best picnic spots.



Kirstenbosch, which was established in 1913 to conserve and showcase the diverse flora of southern Africa, is widely celebrated as one of the great botanical gardens of the world. Picnicking is a favourite local pastime, and the tranquillity and beauty of Kirstenbosch makes it one of the most scenic places to relax on the lawns and enjoy a truly South African spread.

Scientific reserves

These are sensitive, undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and maintenance of genetic sources. Access is limited. Examples are Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive in size, uninhabited, and underdeveloped, and access to them is strictly controlled. Examples are the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape.

National parks and equivalent reserves

SANParks manages a system of parks which represents the indigenous fauna, flora, landscapes and associated cultural heritage of the country. Of all the national parks, most have overnight tourist facilities, with an unrivalled variety of accommodation in arid, coastal, mountain and bushveld habitats.

National parks offer visitors an unparalleled diversity of adventure-tourism opportunities, including game viewing, bush walks, canoeing and exposure to cultural and historical experiences. Conferences can also be organised in many of the parks.

In October 2011, South Africa launched the National Climate Change Response Policy. The policy gives the country a clear roadmap for responding to the urgency of climate change as it pushes towards a "green" economy. The timing of the policy was set to give South Africa some influence during its hosting of the 17th United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change Conference of the Parties change negotiations. South Africa's future sustainable development, economic growth and quality of life will, as with other countries, hinge largely on the impacts of climate change.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ENVIRONMENT

In an effort to fight the escalation in rhino poaching, particularly in the Kruger National Park, a joint operation, known as the National Wildlife Reaction Unit, has been established between South African National Parks, the Department of Environmental Affairs, the South African Police Service, the National Prosecuting Authority, provincial conservation authorities and provincial government structures.



South Africa has the following national parks:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Karoo National Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kruger National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- West Coast National Park.

Between 2007/08 and 2010/11, SANParks acquired 147 040 ha of land. Despite the global economic downturn, average occupancy grew by 7,5% (from 56,2% to 58%).

South Africa is in the process of establishing transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs) in cooperation with its neighbouring countries.

The conservation status of the areas within these TFCAs varies from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting concession areas. Though fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources.

Cape Town's Table Mountain National Park is home to the world's only jumping cockroach, which was named one of the top 10 specie discoveries of the year by an international panel of experts in May 2011. *Saltoblattella montistabularis* is just 1 cm long with powerful hind legs and bulging eyes.



Table Mountain draws more than four million tourist visits every year, and the Silvermine area where the cockroach was found is a 10-minute drive from central Cape Town.

TFCAs aim to facilitate and promote regional peace, cooperation and socio-economic development. The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs are likely to provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

TFCAs allow tourists easy movement across international boundaries into adjoining conservation areas.

The seven TFCAs are as follows:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld TFCA
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park
- Greater Mapungubwe (former Limpopo-Shashe) TFCA
- Kavango-Zambezi
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 protects South Africa's biosphere reserves, which are generally formed around existing core conservation areas.

Biosphere reserves include outstanding natural beauty and biological diversity, exist in partnership with a range of interested landowners and can incorporate development, as long as it is sustainable, while still protecting terrestrial or coastal ecosystems.

South Africa added a sixth biosphere reserve to its register when the Vhembe region of Limpopo became one of 22 newly proclaimed reserves by the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco). The new biospheres, located in 17 countries, were added to Unesco's World Network of Biosphere Reserves during the 21st session of the International Coordinating Council of the Man and the Biosphere Programme. By June 2012, the total stood at 580 sites in 114 countries.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ENVIRONMENT

The other biosphere reserves in South Africa are:

- Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve
- Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve
- Kogelberg Reserve
- Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve
- Waterberg Biosphere Reserve.

The Gouritz Cluster has been nominated for incorporation into the World Network of Biosphere Reserves as South Africa's seventh biosphere reserve.

National and cultural monuments

These are natural or cultural features, or both, and may include botanical gardens, zoological gardens, natural heritage sites and sites of conservation significance.

World heritage sites

By June 2012, the World Heritage List included 936 properties forming part of the cultural and natural heritage. These included 725 cultural, 183 natural and 28 mixed properties in 153 state parties. By March 2012, 189 state parties had ratified the World Heritage Convention.

South Africa has eight world heritage sites proclaimed by Unesco, namely:

- Robben Island
- iSimangaliso Wetland Park
- the hominid sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai (known as the Cradle of Humankind)
- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (a mixed natural and cultural site)
- Mapungubwe Heritage Site
- Cape Floral Kingdom
- Vredefort Dome
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape.

Red data books (RDBs) are lists of threatened plants and animals specific to a certain region. They are a vital source of information in guiding conservation decisions. South Africa has produced five RDBs dealing with each of the following: birds, land mammals, fish (freshwater and estuarine only), reptiles and amphibians, and butterflies.



In July 2011, the Addo Elephant National Park celebrated 80 years of conservation and tourism.



First proclaimed in July 1931 to save the last remaining elephants in the area, the park has, in the last decade, grown to 180 000 ha, making it the third-largest national park in the country.

The top conservation landmarks in the park are the:

- introduction of lions in 2003
- proclamation of a marine protected area around Bird Island in 2005
- amalgamation of the main game area and Colchester areas of the park in 2010.

The establishment of the Mayibuye Ndlovu Development Trust in 2005 and a profit-sharing agreement ensure that communities receive tangible benefits from the park.

Habitat and wildlife management areas

These areas include conservancies; provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species, habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Sustainable-use areas

These areas emphasise the sustainable use of products in protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Wetlands

Wetlands include a wide range of inland and coastal habitats – from mountain bogs, fens and midland marshes to swamp forests and estuaries, linked by green corridors of streambank wetlands.

By 2011, about 115 000 wetlands, covering over four million ha and comprising close to 4% of the country's total surface area, had been mapped in South Africa.

The Working for Wetlands Programme focuses on wetland restoration, while maximising employment creation, support for small, medium and micro-enterprises and skills transfer.

Many wetland plants have medicinal value. In South Africa, traditional medicine is the preferred primary healthcare choice for about 70% of the people. Wetlands provide some of the 19 500 tons of medicinal plant material, which are used by some 28 million South Africans every year.

Sanbi manages the Working for Wetlands Programme, with its offices based at the Pretoria National Botanical Garden.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ENVIRONMENT

In September 2011, the R11,5-million Working for the Coast: Umthamvuna to Umkomaas Project was launched, creating 112 jobs. The project was part of International Coastal Clean-Up Day (ICCD). It aims to create awareness about the importance of conserving oceans for sustainable development that contributes to economic growth and development, and for recreational purposes.



The theme for the 2011 ICCD was *Trash-Free Seas* and it was one of the country's build-up activities towards the 17th Conference of the Parties to the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change and the 7th Session of the Conference of the Parties serving as the meeting of the parties to the Kyoto Protocol, held in Durban towards the end of 2011.

In 2011/12, the Working for Wetlands Programme rehabilitated 427 wetlands and created some 10 000 short-term work opportunities for people from vulnerable and marginalised communities.

Botanical gardens

Sanbi manages nine national botanical gardens (NBGs) in six of South Africa's nine provinces. The gardens collectively attract over 1,25 million visitors a year, are signatories to the International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation and founding members of the African Botanic Gardens Network.

The largest garden is Kirstenbosch, situated on the eastern slopes of Table Mountain in Cape Town. There are more than 7 000 species in cultivation at Kistenbosch, including many rare and threatened species.

The other gardens in the national network are the Karoo Desert in Worcester, Harold Porter in Betty's Bay, Free State in Bloemfontein, KwaZulu-Natal in Pietermaritzburg, Lowveld in Mbombela, Walter Sisulu in Roodepoort/Mogale City, the Pretoria NBG and Hantam in the Northern Cape.

The Pretoria NBG houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, the largest in the southern hemisphere.

Zoos

There are a number of zoological gardens in South Africa. The 85-ha National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa in Pretoria is one of the world's 10 best. It attracts more than 600 000 visitors annually. The national zoo is responsible

for the biodiversity conservation centres in Lichtenburg and Mokopane, and the satellite zoo and animal park at the Emerald Animal World complex in Vanderbijlpark.

The NZG is a national research facility, which presents an opportunity for the zoo to reposition itself as one of the world leaders in breeding and researching endangered species.

The NZG in Pretoria houses 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species and 44 specimens of seven amphibian species.

The total length of walkways in the zoo is about 6 km.

Marine protected areas (MPAs)

MPAs conserve natural environments and assist in the management of fisheries by protecting and rebuilding economically important stocks. They are also used to develop and regulate coastal ecotourism opportunities.

Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

South Africa's MPAs include the:

- Aliwal Shoal MPA, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay MPA, Western Cape
- Bird Island MPA, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop MPA, Western Cape
- Dwesa-Cwebe MPA, Eastern Cape
- Goukamma MPA, Western Cape
- False Bay MPA, Western Cape
- Hluleka MPA, Eastern Cape
- Robberg MPA, Western Cape
- Sardinia Bay MPA, Eastern Cape
- Stilbaai MPA, Western Cape
- Table Mountain MPA, Western Cape
- Trafalgar MPA, KwaZulu-Natal
- Tsitsikamma MPA, Western Cape
- iSimangaliso MPA, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach, Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island MPA, Western Cape
- Pondoland MPA, Eastern Cape.

In September 2011, the Amathole MPA was announced. It is an important addition to South Africa's network of coastal MPAs. It comprises three separate marine areas, namely

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ENVIRONMENT

the Gxulu, Gonubie and Kei areas. It will provide formal and long-term protection to the inshore marine habitat and biodiversity of the Eastern Cape.

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



ARTS AND CULTURE

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ARTS AND CULTURE

South Africa's arts and culture are as varied as one might expect from such a diverse nation. The blend of local cultures and diverse influences make for a melting pot of creativity that never disappoints.

As custodians of South Africa's diverse cultural, artistic and linguistic heritage, the Department of Arts and Culture aims to develop and preserve South African culture to ensure social cohesion and nation-building.

Arts and culture summit

A national consultative summit on the contribution of the arts, culture and heritage sector to the economy was held in April 2011 and took a number of far-reaching resolutions. The summit resolved to continue with the implementation of the National Liberation Heritage Route Project, which will tell the stories of the country's liberation struggle. Another resolution was that the departments of arts and culture and basic education should develop interventions in the education system to bring back arts education into schools. Through this initiative, government will deploy 3 000 full-time art facilitators in schools throughout the country.

Legacy projects

Monuments, museums, plaques, outdoor art, heritage trails and other symbolic representations create visible reminders of, and commemorate, the many aspects of South Africa's past.

Government has initiated several national legacy projects to establish commemorative symbols of South Africa's history and celebrate its heritage.

National coat of arms

South Africa's coat of arms was adopted in 2000.

Symbolism

Rising sun: a life-giving force

Protea: beauty and the flowering of the nation

Ears of wheat: fertility of the land

Elephant tusks: wisdom, steadfastness and strength

Knobkierie and spear: defence of peace

Drum: love of culture

The motto, **!Ke e:xaarra//ke**, written in the Khoisan language of the !Xam people, means "diverse people unite".



Legacy projects include the:

- Women's Monument
- Chief Albert Luthuli's house in KwaDukuza, KwaZulu-Natal
- Battle of Blood River/Ncome Project
- Samora Machel Project
- Nelson Mandela Museum
- Constitution Hill Project
- Sarah Baartman Centre of Remembrance
- Khoisan Legacy Project
- Freedom Park Project
- Dulcie September Legacy Project
- Matola Raid Memorial Project
- Bhambatha Project
- Albert Luthuli Annual Memorial Lecture.

Work is underway in Oliver Tambo's homestead in Nkantolo, in Bizana, where government is building a museum, an interpretation centre and a statue.

An initial amount of R25 million has been set aside for this project.

Work is underway to upgrade and declare as heritage sites the graves of Dr Beyers Naude and Robert Sobukwe in Graaff Reinet.

In KwaZulu-Natal, the Department of Arts and Culture launched the Dr John Dube Heritage Legacy Project. This project will cost R60 million and is expected to create 270 jobs.

In Gauteng, the graves of Rahima Moosa, Helen Joseph, Lillian Ngoyi and Charlotte Maxeke have been declared as national heritage sites.

Government has also declared the Voortrekker Monument in Pretoria as a heritage site and has connected it with the Freedom Park by building a road linking the two institutions, as part of nation-building, reconciliation and nation-healing.

In the Western Cape, the department is working with the Ray Alexander Simonds Memory Centre to build a museum and a community centre in Gugulethu that will celebrate and

In 2011, the restoration of Liliesleaf farm, where many of the Rivonia trial members were seized during 1963, was completed.



The farm was used as a meeting place and a hide-out for senior African National Congress and South African Communist Party leaders in the 1960s.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ARTS AND CULTURE

Through the Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy, the Department of Arts and Culture has identified key policy interventions that will support the growth and development of the creative economy.



The Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy seeks to enhance the art and culture sector's contribution to the national effort to create five million jobs within the next 10 years.

Specifically, through the the Public Art Programme, the department aims to create 10 000 new work opportunities over the next three years.

honour the contribution of workers in the national liberation struggle.

In honouring the heroines of the struggle, government has declared the site of the 1957 anti-pass women's march in Zeerust as a heritage site.

Arts and culture organisations

The following organisations play an active role in preserving and promoting South Africa's arts and culture:

- National Heritage Council
- South African Heritage Resources Agency
- South African Geographical Names Council
- National Arts Council of South Africa (NAC)
- arts institutions such as the State Theatre in Pretoria, Playhouse Company in Durban, Artscape in Cape Town, Market Theatre in Johannesburg, Performing Arts Centre

In September 2011, the Minister of Arts and Culture, Mr Paul Mashatile, announced a National Liberation Heritage Route, to honour the women and men who fought against apartheid.



Some R20 million has been set aside for the construction of a museum at OR Tambo's home in the Eastern Cape, while R50 million has been set aside for Ngquza Hill, where the Pondoland revolt and massacre of 1960 took place. In Mvezo, the birthplace of Nelson Mandela, the department is building a museum and a proposal for funding of R70 million has been developed. Roads and other infrastructure in the areas around museums and monuments will also be upgraded. By mid-2012, work on the Steve Biko Centre in King Williams Town in the Eastern Cape was also underway.

The department is also looking at setting up museums and sites across the border in countries such as Mozambique, Angola, Tanzania and Zambia.

Celebrated South African playwright Athol Fugard received special honours at the 2011 Tony Awards.



Fugard received a Special Tony Award for Lifetime Achievement in the Theatre. Over the years, he has received six Tony nominations, including four for Best Play, for *Sizwe Banzi is Dead* and *The Island* (1975), *A Lesson from Aloes* (1982), *Master Harold ... and The Boys* (1982) and *Blood Knot* (1986).

of the Free State in Bloemfontein and the Windybrow Theatre in Johannesburg

- Business and Arts South Africa
- Arts and Culture Trust.

Cultural industries

South Africa's cultural and creative industry is a good revenue generator, and still has great potential to produce more and contribute to job creation.

The Cultural Industries Growth Strategy capitalises on the economic potential of the craft, music, film, publishing and design industries. The Department of Arts and Culture provides support in the form of financing, management capacity, advocacy and networking, and by developing public-private partnerships and other initiatives that use culture as a tool for urban regeneration.

Worldwide, the turnover of cultural industries makes this the fifth-largest economic sector, which comprises design, the performing arts, film, television, multimedia, cultural heritage, cultural tourism, visual arts, crafts and publishing.

The Department of Arts and Culture has entered into partnership with significant stakeholders to map the cultural industries.

Cabinet has identified the creative and cultural industries as one of the drivers of economic growth and job creation in the implementation of the New Growth Path.

The Industrial Policy Action Plan 2 identifies the cultural industries, in particular the craft sector, music, jewellery production, clothing, leather, footwear and textile as some of the sectors that will be subjected to focused and significant support by the State.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ARTS AND CULTURE

Cultural tourism

Cultural festivals, African-cuisine projects, cultural villages, heritage routes and story-telling are areas that can benefit from South Africa's booming tourism industry.

Arts festivals

A range of arts festivals is held in South Africa every year. These have become popular events, with many of them seeing growing attendance numbers. The Department of Arts and Culture provides financial support to various arts and culture festivals.

The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.

Aardklop, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but universal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists.

Other festivals that attract visitors at both national and international level are the Joy of Jazz International Festival; Cape Town Jazz Festival; Oppikoppi; Calabash; the One City Festival in Taung, North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban; the Spier Summer Festival at Spier Estate in the Western Cape; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; and Innibos, Mbombela.

Theatre

South African theatre is internationally acclaimed as being unique and of top quality.

The theatre scene in South Africa is vibrant, with many active spaces across the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire, to West End and Broadway hits, classical music, opera and ballet.

In recent years, South African theatre has taken the entertainment world by storm with commendable reviews for *Umoja*, *The Lion King* and *Kat and The Kings*. The reception these productions receive in capitals of the world testifies to the high quality of indigenous South African theatre.

In May 2011, the Handspring Puppeteers, Adrian Kohler and Basil Jones, received the prestigious Tony Award for their successful play, *The War Horse*. The play took Broadway by storm and received rave reviews. It also had a successful run in the West End.



Music

While local music styles such as South African jazz have influenced African and world music for decades, gospel and kwaito are the most popular and most recorded styles today.

Kwaito combines elements of rap, reggae, hip-hop and other styles into a distinctly South African sound.

Kwaai Jazz is gaining popularity.

Orchestras

The NAC is responsible for funding the KwaZulu-Natal, Cape and Gauteng orchestras as well as the Cape Town Jazz Orchestra.

Dance

South African dance is unique in its vitality and energy. More and more South African dance companies, individual dancers and choreographers are being invited to perform at festivals throughout Europe, Australia and the United States of America (USA).

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre, to the completely unconventional. Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and everyday life.

The Dance Factory in Johannesburg provides a permanent platform for all kinds of dance and movement groups, while the University of the Witwatersrand (Wits) Theatre is home to the annual Dance Umbrella, a showcase for new work.

The Cape Town City Ballet is the oldest ballet company in the country.

The largest ballet company is the South African Ballet Theatre (SABT), based in Johannesburg.

The SABT celebrated 10 years of existence in February 2011. Marking this celebration, the SABT had two full-length

South African Jodi Bieber's iconic and shocking *Time* magazine cover portrait of an 18-year-old Afghani girl, Bibi Aisha, whose face was mutilated by her Taliban husband, was selected as the World Press Photo of 2010.

Bieber, who previously won eight World Press Photo awards, is only the second South African photographer to win the highest honour in the prestigious contest.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ARTS AND CULTURE

South African literary classic *Jock of the Bushveld* was turned into the country's first 3D-animation film and featured the voices of, among others, Bryan Adams and global peace icon Desmond Tutu.



Based on the 1907 bestseller by Percy Fitzpatrick, who detailed his true-life bush adventures during the 1880s gold rush with his pup Jock, the film made more than R2,2 million at the box office in its opening weekend.

seasons in 2011. The 2011 season included full-length productions of *Romeo and Juliet* and *Sleeping Beauty*, as well as its annual year-end concert.

Visual arts

Art galleries in South Africa's major cities (such as the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal; the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng; the South African National Gallery in Cape Town; and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Art Museum in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape) display collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary work.

Universities also play an important role in acquiring artwork of national interest.

These include collections housed in the Gertrude Posel Gallery at Wits, the University of South Africa Gallery in Pretoria, the Edoardo Villa Museum and other galleries at the University of Pretoria, and a collection of contemporary Indian art at the University of KwaZulu-Natal.

Crafts

The craft industry has been identified as a strategic sector for the economic upliftment of South Africans. The crafts industry has the potential to create meaningful jobs and the Department of Arts and Culture has begun to consolidate the marketing and distribution of South African products to international markets such as Art Mundi in Brazil.

Film

The South African film and television industry is valued at around R12 billion a year and creates direct and indirect jobs for more than 30 000 people.

Funding for film production increased from 6,9 million in 2009/10 to R8,7 million in 2010/11.

There was an estimated 20% increase in the number of bed nights used by film producers in Cape Town in the 2010/11 summer season, compared with the previous summer. Most came from Britain and Europe (Germany, Italy, Spain and the Scandinavian countries) but also from the USA and increasingly India.

By the third quarter of 2010/11, 3 793 permits had been issued for, among other productions, South African, Italian, Dutch, American, British and Indian productions.

The National Film and Video Foundation develops and promotes the film and video industry in South Africa. It is also involved in the development of projects that appeal to targeted audiences and have greater commercial returns. The foundation disburses grants for developing and producing feature films, short films, television series, documentaries and animation projects, as well as bursaries for students from other countries. This ensures a South African presence at major local and international film markets, festivals and exhibitions.

Literature

The South African book sector has become globally competitive and the country's writers continue to command respect across the world.

The total net turnover of the book publishing industry in 2010 was estimated to be worth R3,4 billion. More than 12 000 authors earned an estimated R1,8 billion worth of royalties. The publishing industry employs about 3 000 individuals on a full-time basis and 2 400 freelancers.

More than 7 000 people are employed in the printing industry.

Electronic books downloaded onto a special reading device is gaining in popularity. In 2010, this subsector earned about R1,2 million with a total of 524 titles available.

The new pop culture in poetry, often referred to as "spoken-word poetry", is one of the most celebrated art forms throughout the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq Pearl, Jessica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. There are regular platforms created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The current generation of writers is also making its mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ARTS AND CULTURE

Cape Town hosted the 29th International Publishers Association Publishers Congress from 12 – 14 June 2012 in the week preceding the sixth Cape Town Book Fair.



and the late K Sello Duiker having their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish.

The Department of Arts and Culture in collaboration with the National Library of South Africa (NLSA) is reprinting some out-of-print books that are considered as classics in indigenous African languages.

A total of 27 titles in all the nine previously marginalised languages were reproduced and distributed to public libraries across the nation.

The department embarked on the second phase of the project, which involved the re-issuing of a total of 18 titles (two in each indigenous language). These titles include

National anthem

The national anthem is a combined version of *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* (*God bless Africa*) and *The Call of South Africa* (*Die Stem*).

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba
sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.

National symbols

South Africa's national symbols are:



National animal:
Springbok



National bird:
Blue Crane



National fish:
Galjoen



National flower:
King Protea



National tree:
Real Yellowwood

National orders

South Africa's national orders are:



The Order of
the Baobab



The Order of
Mapungubwe



The Order of the
Companions of OR Tambo



The Order of
Luthuli



The Order of Mendi
for Bravery



The Order of
Ikhamanga

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

ARTS AND CULTURE

Apha Naphaya by DM Jongilanga, *Ikusasa Alaziwa* by OTM Nxumalo and *Megokgo ya Bjoko* by Oliver Kgadime Matsepe.

Museums

More than 300 of the approximately 1 000 museums in Africa are in South Africa. The Department of Arts and Culture subsidises most museums, which are otherwise autonomous.

The department pays an annual subsidy to 13 national museums, ensuring the preservation of artefacts and collections that are important to all South Africans.

National Library of South Africa

The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's key knowledge resources. It is mandated by the NLSA Act, 1998 to collect and preserve intellectual documentary heritage material and to make it accessible worldwide. It ensures that knowledge and information are not lost to posterity and are available for future research.

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



TOURISM

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

TOURISM

Tourism has been identified as one of the key economic sectors with excellent potential for growth.

The Department of Tourism aims to increase the industry's contribution to the economy from R189 billion in 2009 to R499 billion by 2020.

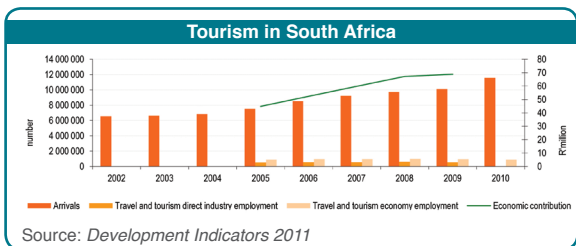
The department aims to increase the number of foreign tourist arrivals from seven million in 2009 to 15 million by 2020 and the number of domestic tourists from 14,6 million to 18 million. It is expected to create some 225 000 new jobs by 2020.

There were 3,7 million travellers (a 2% increase) moving in and out of South Africa in December 2011, compared to the same period in 2010. Of these, over 2,5 million were foreigners and 1,2 million were locals. These numbers include both arrivals and departures.

The majority of visitors came from Southern African Development Community countries, but there was also steady inflow from the United Kingdom, the United States of America and Germany.

Most of the movement into and out of the country was through OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg; Cape Town International Airport; the Beit Bridge border post between South Africa and Zimbabwe; the Lebombo border post into Mozambique; Ficksburg and Maseru Bridge into Lesotho; Oshoek and Golela into Swaziland; and Kopfontein and Ramatlabama into Botswana.

South Africa's tourism sector will be boosted significantly by the 200 international events confirmed to take place in the country over the next five years, which include meetings and conferences that are expected to attract about 300 000 delegates. The potential economic impact of these meetings



and conferences is expected to be R1,6 billion. The country's major cities such as Cape Town, Johannesburg and Durban will host most of the upcoming meetings and conferences.

Tourism policy

In March 2011, the Department of Tourism launched the National Tourism Sector Strategy (NTSS).

The strategy is a sector-wide plan and includes deliverables for all major role players in the tourism sector. Its core objectives are to grow the tourism sector's contribution to gross domestic product (GDP), achieve transformation, provide people development and decent jobs, and entrench a culture of travel among South Africans.

The key focus areas of the NTSS are:

- arrivals – the strategy will direct the achievement of increased numbers of tourists to South Africa by, among other things, working towards increasing the number of foreign tourist arrivals to 15 million in 2020
- GDP – the aim is to increase tourism's contribution to the GDP from an estimated R189,4 billion in 2009 to R499 billion by 2020
- job creation – the tourism sector is committed to consolidating its efforts to create 225 000 jobs by 2020.

To achieve these three overarching objectives, the NTSS will focus on the following:

- Domestic tourism development – The department and its partners would like to promote a culture of travel among South Africans. Through the NTSS, government aims to increase the number of domestic trips from 30,9 million in 2009 to 54 million by 2020.
- Regional tourism development – It is becoming increasingly important that South Africa continues with its visible contribution to regional development, and the strategy is aimed at growing the value of regional tourism by establishing five South African Tourism (SAT) offices on the continent by 2020. Statistics indicates that within Africa there are

South Africa could benefit by an estimated R14 billion a year as a result of Table Mountain being chosen as one of the New seven Wonders of Nature, in November 2011.

It is estimated that tourism to Cape Town would increase by about 20%, mostly from international tourists.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

TOURISM

Domestic tourism historically has been, and remains, the largest contributor to tourist volume in South Africa, with 79% of all volume in 2010 derived from domestic tourists. Holiday travel increased from 12% of domestic and international trips taken to 13%. The percentage spend on holiday travel increased to 31% in 2010 compared to 22% in 2009. The total annual bed nights for domestic travel increased to 130,8 billion in 2010, compared to 128,4 million in 2009. The average length of stay also increased from 4,2 nights per trip in 2009 to 4,4 nights per trip in 2010.



markets that South Africa has not taken full advantage of in terms of the numbers of outbound tourists.

- Emerging markets – South Africa has joined the BRIC countries (Brazil, Russia, India and China), giving it a competitive advantage on a number of economic development endeavours. The number of outbound tourists from these markets in 2010 was more than 5,4 million from Brazil, more than 35 million from Russia, more than 12 million from India and more than 31 million from China.
- Business events – The emerging international approach to growing tourism, and business tourism in particular, is an increased focus on business events. Business events include meetings, expos, incentives, congresses, conferences, exhibitions and trade fairs. South Africa has already secured 200 international conferences for the next five years, which is estimated to attract 300 000 delegates and provide an economic boost of more than R1,6 billion.

Some of the programmes the department will implement in its efforts to create a skills base and job opportunities for the industry, especially for young people, are the:

- Chefs Youth Training Project, with an intake of 800 unemployed young people over a three-year period, and a budget of R25 million for the first year.
- Hospitality Youth Initiative, which is a training and experiential placement project for unemployed youth. The initial target of 300 was increased to a total intake of 800. The budget of R7 million was given additional funding of R15 million.
- Tourism Buddies Youth Project, which is a tourism and hospitality training and experiential placement programme with a total intake of 975 youth to be trained nationally and a budget of R39 million. The department is expecting to

Top 10 tourist attractions

1. Kruger National Park
2. Table Mountain
3. Garden Route
4. Cape Town's Victoria and Alfred Waterfront
5. Robben Island
6. Beaches
7. Sun City
8. Cultural villages
9. Soweto
10. The Cradle of Humankind

Source: SA Venues

extend this annual project to 2012/13 depending on its performance, availability of funding and demand.

In September 2011, the Minister of Tourism, Mr Marthinus van Schalkwyk, launched the National Minimum Standards for Responsible Tourism in Knysna. Responsible tourism is about creating better places for people to live in, and better places to visit.

South Africa's natural environment is one of its greatest tourism resources, and therefore the tourism industry needs to be actively involved in conserving and protecting it.

These standards serve to:

- establish a common understanding of the minimum criteria for responsible tourism
- promote responsible tourism in the tourism sector, including accommodation, hospitality and travel distribution
- establish the minimum criteria for certification of the sustainability of organisations in the tourism sector.

In this regard, the Minister announced the establishment of National Convention Bureau.

It is expected that this bureau will have a significant effect in terms of, among other things, consolidating, coordinating and strengthening the department's efforts to attract meetings and conventions to South Africa. The bureau was established under the auspices of SAT and became operational in April 2012.

Travel formalities

- Foreign visitors should check before arriving whether a visa is required. Visas are free of charge.
- Visitors must have at least one blank page in their passports.
- Tourists must have return or onward tickets.
- Visitors from yellow-fever areas must have proof of inoculation.
- Foreign tourists may have their value-added tax refunded upon departure.
- For safety, emergency and other information, tourists can phone 083 123 2345 (24 hours a day) when they are in South Africa.

Tourism in the provinces

Western Cape

The Western Cape continues to be one of the destinations most favoured by foreigners.

Some attractions in Cape Town are:

- the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront
- the Company's Gardens
- the District Six Museum
- the houses of Parliament and the South African National Gallery
- a boat trip to Robben Island, the place where former President Nelson Mandela spent most of his 27 years in jail.

Table Mountain is a popular site for visitors and provides a majestic backdrop to the vibrant and friendly "Mother City". The top of the mountain can be reached by an ultramodern cableway.

Cape Point, part of the Table Mountain National Park, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. The park has a marine protected area encompassing almost 1 000 km².

Newlands is home to Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden.

Hout Bay is well known for its colourful working harbour, seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal island, and a harbour-front emporium that attracts many visitors.

The wine routes outside Cape Town offer the chance to taste first-class wines in arguably the most beautiful winelands in the world.

Superb accommodation is available in historic towns such as Paarl, Stellenbosch and Franschhoek, as well as on many estates and farms.

Garden Route

The Garden Route has well-developed tourist infrastructure, spectacular scenery and a temperate climate, making the region popular all year round.

Not to be missed

- The city of George is at the heart of the Garden Route and the mecca of golf in the southern Cape. It is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate.
- Knysna, nestling on an estuary, is one of South Africa's favourite destinations, known for its indigenous forests, lakes and beaches.
- Just 29 km from Oudtshoorn, the ostrich-feather capital of the world, at the start of the Cango Valley, lie the Cango Caves, the only show caves in Africa that offer a choice of tours in various languages. The remarkable caves are a series of 30 spectacular subterranean limestone caverns. The cave system is 5,3 km long.

Central Karoo

The Central Karoo forms part of one of the world's most interesting and unique arid zones. This ancient, fossil-rich land, with the richest desert flora in the world, also has the world's largest variety of succulents.

Key attractions

- Matjiesfontein, a tiny railway village in the Karoo, offers tourists a peek into the splendour of colonial Victorian South Africa.
- Prince Albert is a well-preserved town, which nestles at the foot of the Swartberg mountains. The Fransie Pienaar Museum offers interesting cultural-history displays, a fossil room and an exhibit of gold-mining activities in the 19th century.

South Africa has eight world heritage sites, namely: Robben Island, iSimangaliso Wetland Park, uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park, Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape, Sterkfontein Cradle of Humankind, the Cape Floral Kingdom, the Vredefort Dome and the Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape.



- The museum in Beaufort West, birthplace of heart surgeon Prof. Chris Barnard, depicts the story of the world's first heart transplant. The Karoo National Park on the outskirts of the town is also worth a visit.

Northern Cape

The Augrabies Falls National Park, with its magnificent falls pressing through a narrow rock ravine, remains the main attraction of the Northern Cape. Game drives reveal a variety of birdlife and animals such as klipspringer, steenbok, wild cats and otters.

Key attractions

- The Kimberley Mine Museum is South Africa's largest full-scale open-air museum. Underground mine tours are a big attraction. The Freddy Tate Golf Museum at the Kimberley Golf Club was the first golfing museum in Africa. The Kimberley Ghost Trail has become a popular tourist attraction.
- The Robert Sobukwe House in Galeshewe was once the residence of Sobukwe, an important figure in South African history and a major role player in the rise of African political consciousness.
- The Orange River Wine Cellars Coop in Upington offers wine-tastings and cellar tours. The South African Dried Fruit Cooperative is the second-largest in the world.
- Moffat's Mission in Kuruman is a tranquil place, featuring the house of missionary Robert Moffat, whose son-in-law was explorer David Livingstone.
- Namaqualand, the land of the Nama and San people, puts on a spectacular show in spring when its floral splendour covers vast tracts of desert in a riot of colour.
- A cultural centre at Wildebeestkuil outside Kimberley features !Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people.
- The 100-m high, 9-km long and 2-km wide white sand dune at the Witsand Nature Reserve near Postmasburg should not be missed.

Free State

In the capital, Bloemfontein, the Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building) was built in 1849 as a school and is the city's oldest surviving building that is still in its original condition. It is still used as the seat of the Provincial Legislature.

The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36,5 m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/ South African War.

Not to be missed

- Clarens is surrounded by spectacular scenery and boasts many art galleries.
- The Golden Gate Highlands National Park outside Clarens has beautiful sandstone rock formations.
- The King's Park Rose Garden in Bloemfontein boasts more than 4 000 rose bushes.
- The Vredefort Dome, a world heritage site, is the oldest and largest meteorite impact site in the world. It was formed about two billion years ago when a giant meteorite hit the Earth.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape is the only province in South Africa, and one of the few places on Earth, where all seven biomes (major vegetation types) converge.

What to see and do

- The rugged beauty of the Wild Coast, including Hole-in-the-Wall.
- Port Elizabeth, the sunshine capital of the Eastern Cape, with its friendly people and excellent beaches.
- The Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle in New Brighton, Port Elizabeth – winner of several international awards.

South Africa is home to the world's:

- largest land mammal – African elephant
- smallest mammal – a shrew the size of a human fingertip
- tallest mammal – the giraffe
- fastest mammal – cheetah
- heaviest reptile – leatherback turtle
- largest antelope – eland
- heaviest flying bird – Kori Bustard.

It is also home to:

- 900 bird species – 10% of the world's variety on 1% of its land area
- 6 000 different spiders, 175 varieties of scorpion and 100 different snakes
- 23 200 different "fynbos" plants, making it the richest zone on Earth in terms of species to area.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

TOURISM

In 2011/12, 28 South African beaches were awarded Blue Flag status for excelling in safety, cleanliness, water quality, provision of amenities and maintenance of environmental standards.



The Blue Flag is an international voluntary eco-label awarded to over 3 450 beaches and marinas in 41 countries. Local beaches that received Blue Flag accreditation include:

Eastern Cape

- Dolphin Beach, Jeffrey's Bay
- Humewood Beach, Port Elizabeth
- Kariega Beach, Kenton-on-Sea
- Kelly's Beach, Port Alfred
- Robberg 5 Beach, Plettenberg Bay.

KwaZulu-Natal

- Lucien Beach, South Coast
- Margate Beach, South Coast
- Marina/San Lameer Beach, South Coast
- Ramsgate Beach, South Coast
- Trafalgar Beach, South Coast
- Umzumbe (Pumula) Beach, South Coast.

Northern Cape

- McDougalls Bay Beach, Port Nolloth.

Western Cape

- Bikini Beach, Gordon's Bay
- Camps Bay Beach, Cape Town
- Clifton 4th Beach, Cape Town
- Grotto Beach, Hermanus
- Hartenbos Beach, Mossel Bay
- Hawston Beach, near Hermanus
- Keurboom Beach, near Hermanus
- Kleinmond Beach, Kleinmond
- Llandudno, Cape Town
- Lappiesbaai Beach, Stilbaai
- Mnandi Beach, Cape Town
- Muizenberg Beach, Cape Town
- Santos Beach, Mossel Bay
- Strandfontein Beach, Cape Town
- Witsand Beach, mouth of the Breede River
- Silwerboom Beach, West Coast.

- The Tsitsikamma National Park, and forests and rivers in the area.
- East London, South Africa's only river port, originally established as a supply port to serve the British military headquarters at King William's Town.

- The village of Qunu, where former President Mandela grew up and which now features the Nelson Mandela Museum.
- The world's highest bungee jump (216 m) at the Bloukrans Bridge over the Storms River.
- Varied game reserves, including the Addo Elephant, Mountain Zebra and Mkambati parks.

Limpopo

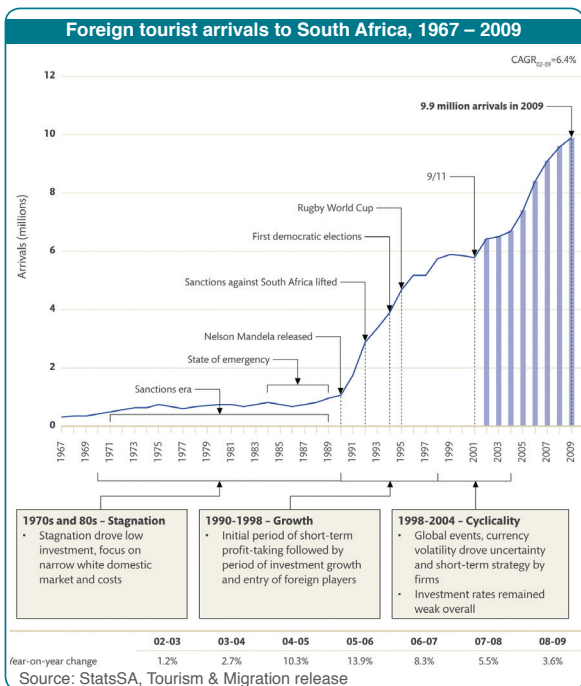
Limpopo is well endowed with cultural diversity, historical sites and tourist attractions, and is an excellent destination for get-away-from-it-all luxury holidays in the bush.

Not to be missed

- The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves. The Arend Dieperink Museum offers a fine cultural-historical collection, while the Makapan caves are famous for their fossils. The Makapan Valley is the only cultural-heritage site of its kind. It reflects the history of the Ndebele people and resistance wars dating back 151 years. The fossil hominid sites of Sterkfontein include Makapan Valley.
- With its outstanding game reserves, the Thabazimbi district is one of the fastest-growing ecotourism areas in South Africa.
- Bela-Bela is well known among South Africans, and increasingly foreigners, for its hot-water springs, fun water slides and scenery.
- The Waterberg mountain range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands, birdlife and dramatic vistas.
- The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Modjadji, who inspired Rider Haggard's *She*.
- Phalaborwa has one of the country's top-rated golf courses – just watch out for animals on the fairways.
- The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, a short drive west of Makhado, are built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and depict their lifestyle in the mid-18th century.
- the Big Tree in the Mutale district is one of the largest known baobabs in southern Africa.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

TOURISM



North West

The province abounds with attractions, including wild animals and fun nights at the famous Sun City and Lost City resorts, which offer, among other things, gambling, golf and an artificial sea.

Key attractions

- The Historic Route of Mafikeng includes the town of Mafikeng, which was besieged by the Boers during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.
- The Groot Marico region, mampoer (moonshine) country, is associated with author Herman Charles Bosman.

- The Hartbeespoort Dam and surrounds are popular for weekend outings, yachting and golf.
- The Pilanesberg National Park is situated in the transition zone between the Kalahari and the Lowveld. It is home to the Big Five, an abundance of animals and over 300 bird species. It is the fourth-largest park in South Africa.
- The Taung Skull Fossil Site is an extension of the Sterkfontein hominid sites. The site marks the place where the celebrated Taung skull – a specimen of the species *Australopithecus africanus* – was found in 1924.
- Madikwe Game Reserve, one of South Africa's largest game reserves, is home to 66 large mammal species, including the Big Five, and about 300 resident and migrant bird species.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – “the place where the sun rises” – lies in the north-eastern part of South Africa, bordered by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Swaziland to the south-east. Scenic beauty and wildlife are abundant.

Tourist attractions

- Historical sites and villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark the lives of the characters who came to Mpumalanga seeking their fortune. The town of Pilgrim's Rest is a living monument reflecting the region's gold-fever period.
- The Blyde River Canyon Nature Reserve near Graskop has striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants.
- Within the Blyde River Canyon Nature Reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of flood water. The spectacular Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment. It is the world's third-largest canyon and the only green canyon.
- The region includes the southern section of the Kruger National Park, which draws a million visitors yearly.
- An annual frog-watching festival is held at Chrissiesmeer, South Africa's largest freshwater lake.
- Dullstroom is popular with trout- and fly-fishing enthusiasts.

Gauteng

Gauteng, the economic heart of southern Africa, offers a vibrant business environment and many tourist attractions, including a rainbow of ecological and cultural diversity.

Key attractions

- The Vaal Dam covers some 300 km² and is a popular venue for water sport. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam is also popular with birders and anglers.
- The Sterkfontein caves near Krugersdorp are the site of the discovery of the skull of the famous Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil; and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton of more than 3,3 million years old.
- The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden has a 70-m high waterfall, stunning indigenous plant displays and a breeding pair of black eagles.
- There is a ring of hills a kilometre in diameter and 100 m high just 40 km north of Pretoria. These hills are the walls of the Tswaing Meteorite Crater, left by an asteroid 200 000 years ago.
- The National Zoological Gardens in Pretoria is considered one of the 10 best in the world.
- The Constitution Hill Precinct is set to become one of South Africa's most popular landmarks.
- The old mining town of Cullinan is where the world's biggest diamond, the 3 106-carat Cullinan diamond, was found.
- A guided tour of Soweto leaves a lasting impression of this vast community's life and struggle against apartheid.
- The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg tells the story of the legacy of apartheid through photographs, film and artefacts.
- The Union Buildings in Pretoria was the venue for the inauguration of presidents Mandela, Thabo Mbeki and Jacob Zuma.

KwaZulu-Natal

Also known as the Zulu Kingdom, KwaZulu-Natal is a combination of natural wonders, fascinating culture and ultra-modern facilities.

Durban's Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Drawcards include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains.

Enticing attractions

- The uShaka Marine World theme park comprises an oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute situated on Durban's Point.

- Spot dolphins or laze the days away on the coastline between the Umdloti and Tugela rivers – the Dolphin Coast.
- The Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, one of the largest game parks in South Africa, is home to the Big Five, as well as cheetah and wild dogs.
- The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, and the Valley of Zulu Kings give visitors insight into the Zulu nation's history and culture.
- The iSimangaliso Wetland Park is one of the highest forested dunes in the world, and has an abundance of fish and birds.
- The Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Tugela falls.
- The Battlefields Route in northern KwaZulu-Natal has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa.
- Every year around June or July, millions of sardines leave their home on the Agulhas banks and move up to the coast of Mozambique. Thousands of dolphins, Cape gannets, sharks and game fish follow the "sardine run" northwards.

Things to see and do in South Africa

Just a few of the attractions that make South Africa an exceptional destination:

- breathtaking Cape Town with its laid-back, welcoming attitude and vibrant nightlife, nestling at the foot of Table Mountain
- Cape Point
- the delights of Sun City and the Lost City, and many other first-rate casino resorts
- walking in the spectacular Drakensberg mountains
- the chance to learn how to say "hello" in the country's 11 official languages
- the country's Blue Flag beaches
- the variety of national parks and transfrontier conservation areas
- eight world heritage sites
- the lilac-breasted roller, the blue crane and the other 900 bird species to be spotted in southern Africa
- the Big Five and other wild animals found in the many parks and game reserves

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

TOURISM

- the strange halfmens (half-human) and the exotic baobab, just some of South Africa's many amazing trees and plants
- battlefields on which imperial Britain fought Zulus, Xhosas and Boers
- the dazzling floral displays which carpet Namaqualand every year
- the mountains, forests and beaches of the Garden Route
- the silence and solitude of the Karoo's wide-open spaces
- country hospitality (and home cooking) in hundreds of picturesque towns and villages across South Africa
- the endless golden beaches of the Eastern Cape
- fly-fishing in stunning scenery with first-class accommodation
- fabulous golf courses that produced the likes of Gary Player, Ernie Els, Retief Goosen, Louis Oosthuizen and Charl Schwartzel
- an array of cultural villages, arts festivals, rock paintings and museums
- the adrenaline rush of the many adventure-tourism opportunities available in the country.

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



HEALTH

HEALTH

Government's priority is to improve the health status of the entire population and contribute to the vision of a long and healthy life for all South Africans. To accomplish this vision, government has identified four strategic outputs which the health sector must achieve. These are:

- increasing life expectancy
- decreasing maternal and child mortality
- combating HIV and AIDS and decreasing the burden of tuberculosis (TB)
- strengthening health-system effectiveness.

The Department of Health's 10-Point Plan for the health sector includes the following priorities:

- providing strategic leadership and creating a social contract for better health outcomes
- implementing the National Health Insurance (NHI) system
- improving quality of health services
- overhauling the healthcare system and improving its management
- improving human-resource management, planning and development
- revitalising infrastructure
- accelerating implementation of the Strategic Plan 2012 – 2016 for HIV, AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) and increasing focus on TB and other communicable diseases
- reviewing the drug policy
- improving the effectiveness of the health system
- strengthening research and development.

Funding

The bulk of health-sector funding comes from National Treasury. The Department of Health's budget grew by 15,3% from R21,7 billion in 2010/11 to R25,7 billion in 2011/12.

Policy areas that received additional funding included:

- the HIV and AIDS Conditional Grant
- the Hospital Revitalisation Conditional Grant
- the *Mass Measles Immunisation Campaign*
- stabilising personnel expenditure
- improving the conditions of service for employees in the department, including the National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS) and South African Medical Research Council.

Health status

Child health

Several areas of progress have been identified, especially in terms of reducing the effect of childhood illnesses.

Improving immunisation coverage ranks high among renowned strategies for improving child health. Immunisation campaigns have been markedly successful in preventable diseases, including polio and measles.

Carefully planned and systemic interventions, based on the Negotiated Service Delivery Agreement objectives, have been adopted for child health.

Postnatal and newborn interventions include:

- early and exclusive breastfeeding
- warmth provision
- infection control
- provision of vitamin A to the mother when indicated.

Community-based interventions include:

- increasing home visits by community workers to within 10 days of delivery for normal birth-weight babies and an additional three in the subsequent three weeks for lower birth-weight babies
- improving referral channels between community health workers and midwives
- expanding the Perinatal Problem Identification Programme to include more facilities.

In August 2011, the Minister of Health, Dr Aaron Motsoaledi, announced that government would no longer distribute free infant formula at health facilities, in an effort to promote exclusive breastfeeding,

Women's health

The fifth Millennium Development Goal requires countries to improve maternal health and reduce their maternal mortality ratio by 75% by 2015.

The data, based on reported live births from the District Health Information System (DHIS) (2010), shows that the percentage of women in South Africa whose live birth occurred in a health facility increased from 76,6% in 2001 to 94,1% in 2009. This indicates a significant improvement in the extent of services provided at healthcare facilities in South Africa.

Access to and use of antenatal care services has an impact on pregnancy outcome, child survival and maternal health.

According to the DHIS, 97% of pregnant women used antenatal care during 2009.

The data shows that South Africa has demonstrated commitment to reducing maternal mortality. It is evident that expanded health infrastructure, enhanced access and increased usage are beginning to translate into improved health outcomes for women.

Women tend to have a higher burden of disease than men and therefore need more services. The package of interventions for women's health includes:

- family planning and contraceptive services
- care following sexual assault
- treatment of STIs
- a focus on diseases specific to women such as cervical cancer.

Sexual and reproductive health interventions include contraceptive information services, safe termination of pregnancy and reproductive health education and services.

Communicable disease control

HIV prevalence in South Africa appears to be stabilising after peaking in the 1990s and early 2000s. South Africa has the largest Antiretroviral (ARV) Therapy Programme in the world.

In April 2010, the upscaled HIV and AIDS Prevention and Treatment Plan was launched. Measures include that:

- All children under one year of age receive ARV treatment if they test HIV-positive, irrespective of their CD4 level.
- All patients with both TB and HIV get ARV treatment if their CD4 count is 350 or less.
- All pregnant HIV-positive women with a CD4 count of 350 or less are started on ARV treatment.
- All other HIV-positive pregnant women not falling in this category are put on treatment at 14 weeks of pregnancy to protect the baby.
- A massive counselling and testing campaign has been launched, and all 4 300 public health institutions in the country are ready to receive and assist patients. By February 2012, more than 17 million people had been tested for HIV and more than eight million had been screened for TB.

The department's Prevention of Mother-to-Child Transmission (PMTCT) Programme is yielding results, with sus-

In April 2011, the Department of Health hosted the National Nursing Summit, which focused on addressing human-resource concerns in the nursing sector. The department identified 122 nursing colleges nationwide that would be improved, of which 72 were expected to be refurbished by the end of 2011/12. The project will run over three years at a total cost of R1,24 billion.



tained declines observed in transmission rates while programme coverage is increasing. There is a high uptake of treatment for PMTCT – 98% of HIV-infected mothers tested were put on treatment.

Nationally, mother-to-child transmission of HIV has declined from about 8% to 3,5%.

Government has increased capacity to care for people living with HIV and requiring ARV treatment. Facilities providing ART increased to 1 668 by June 2011. More than 1 750 nurses have been trained in Nurse Initiated and Managed ARV Treatment, making it possible for professional nurses to put people onto treatment.

A characteristic of AIDS in South Africa is the interlinkage with the prevalence of TB.

Reporting of TB management, specifically treatment outcomes, has enjoyed considerable attention. By mid-2011, the TB cure rate for the year had been achieved. Treatment completion rates and default rates were on track, while 17 facilities were made available for diagnosing and initiating treatment for drug-resistant TB patients.

TB control and management is improving, with the national TB cure rate reaching the 70% mark for the first time, although work still needs to be done to achieve the 85% recommended by the World Health Organisation.

In June 2011, the department announced a three-pronged strategy to deal with TB.

Policy Improving quality of service

Six priority areas have been identified for immediate improvement:

- staff attitudes and the values underpinning them
- reducing the long waiting times or delays in receiving care
- ensuring all facilities are spotlessly clean and tidy
- protecting the clinical as well as the physical safety of patients and staff

- taking the measures needed to avoid transmission of infections and cross-infection
- ensuring that basic medicines and supplies are available when patients are seen.

In November 2011, Cabinet approved the National Health Amendment Bill for Office and Health Standards Compliance, which will accredit health facilities. In preparation, the department put in place quality norms and standards, which cover the availability of medicines and supplies, cleanliness, patient safety, infection prevention and control, positive attitudes and waiting time in all health facilities.

By August 2011, the department had audited more than 1 600 public health facilities against these standards.

Re-engineering primary healthcare (PHC)

The re-engineered PHC system is one of the Department of Health's four central interventions of the NHI.

The district specialist task teams each consist of an:

- anaesthetist
- family physician
- PHC nurse
- obstetrician
- advanced midwife
- paediatrician
- advanced paediatric nurse.

Every district has a team responsible for supportive supervision and clinical governance within its defined geographic area. These task teams need to strengthen existing services and ensure equitable access to appropriate care for all mothers, babies and children.

Improving health infrastructure

Over 2 100 individual infrastructure-related projects exist in health facilities in South Africa – ranging from maintenance and minor repairs to renovation and major construction works. As a result, 138 clinics and 38 community health centres were constructed nationally (an increase of 4% in the total number of PHC facilities in South Africa).

An infrastructure support model has been implemented, a component of which includes the appointment of engineers in each province to provide consistent technical expertise for managing active projects in the health sector.

Eighteen major revitalisation projects have been initiated nationwide in hospitals in urgent need of infrastructure development. Five of these 18 projects are identified as flagship projects, supported through public-private partnerships.

National Health Insurance

The *Green Paper on NHI* was released in August 2011 for comment. The cornerstone of the proposed NHI system is universal coverage. NHI is a financing system that will ensure the provision of essential healthcare to all citizens of South Africa (and legal long-term residents), regardless of their employment status and ability to make a direct monetary contribution to the NHI Fund.

This is seen as a 14-year project, with the first five years being a process of building and preparation.

Although the NHI service package will not include everything, it will offer care at all levels, from PHC to specialised secondary care, and highly specialised tertiary and quaternary levels of care.

Nutrition

The work of the Department of Health is critical in improving children's nutrition levels. Key targets by 2014 include:

- decreasing the percentage of the total population who experiences hunger from 52% to 30%, using national food consumption survey data
- dropping the rate of undernutrition of children from 9,3% to 5%
- keeping the Consumer Price Index stable for poor people (who are heavily dependent on the prices of food)
- establishing more than 67 920 community, institutional and school gardens to enable at least 30% of poor households to produce some of their food and improve income.

Health team

In 2010, the team of healthcare practitioners consisted of:

- 36 000 registered medical practitioners, including doctors working for the State, those in private practice and specialists
- 54 673 emergency care practitioners
- 5 185 dentists
- 3 032 optometrists
- 5 624 physiotherapists

Between 2002 and 2011, the number of registered nurses increased by 37%, from 172 869 to 238 196.



- 6 816 psychologists
- 231 086 nurses.

South Africa has a shortage of certain health professionals such as physiotherapists, dieticians and radiographers.

National Health Laboratory Service

The NHLS is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa, with over 250 laboratories serving 80% of the country's population. All laboratories provide laboratory diagnostic services to the national and provincial departments of health, provincial hospitals, local governments and medical practitioners.

The NHLS conducts health-related research appropriate to the needs of the broader population, including research into HIV and AIDS, TB, malaria, pneumococcal infections, occupational health, cancer and malnutrition. The NHLS trains pathologists, medical scientists, occupational health practitioners, technologists and technicians in pathology disciplines.

Medical schemes

In September 2011, there were about 110 medical schemes with around 8 068 505 beneficiaries. These schemes have a total annual contribution flow of about R84,9 billion.

POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



SPORT & RECREATION

SPORT & RECREATION

Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA) is the national department responsible for sport in South Africa. Aligned with its vision of An Active and Winning Nation, its primary focuses are on providing opportunities for all South Africans to participate in sport; managing the regulatory framework; and providing funding for different codes of sport.

The SRSA has a number of flagship programmes through which it implements its objectives.

These programmes touch the lives of millions of South Africans, from schoolchildren participating in school sport, communities sharing in the benefits of mass participation programmes and events, and organisations benefiting from the SRSA's financial and logistical support.

Initiatives Golden Games

The 2011 Golden Games, part of the SRSA's Older Persons Programme, were held in the Free State in October 2011 with the theme *Celebrating Active Ageing*.

The Golden Games is a national event where persons older than 65 compete in various sporting codes at provincial level. Codes that form part of the Golden Games include soccer, athletics (800 m and 4x100-m relay), brisk walk, duck walk, passing the ball, rugbyball throw, jukskei and goal shooting.

The Western Cape was crowned the 2011 Golden Games champion.

All-Africa Games

The 10th All-Africa Games took place in September 2011 in Maputo, Mozambique, and featured 20 sporting disciplines in which 53 countries participated. Events for people with disabilities also featured in swimming and athletics.

Team South Africa finished first on the medals table, with 62 gold medals, 55 silver and 40 bronze, totalling 157 medals.

The Guinness Book of World Records has recognised South Africa's famous ultra-marathon, the Comrades, as the event with "the most runners in an ultra-marathon".

The 2011 race had 19 951 entries, with approximately 12 600 starters and 11 070 finishers.



The South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS) is the national anti-doping organisation, funded by Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA). Its mandate is to promote participation in sport, free from the use of prohibited substances or methods intended to artificially enhance performance in the interest of the health and well-being of sportspeople.



In June 2011, the SAIDS launched the *I Play Fair – Say NO! to Doping* Campaign to spread the message of ethics, fair play and anti-doping in sport. The SRSA supports the campaign, which provides education about banned substances and runs actual doping tests.

South African Sports Awards

The SRSA and the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (Sascoc) created the South African Sports Awards to honour the country's sports stars.

In 2011, 16 awards were handed out at the fourth South African Sports Awards evening, held at Sun City in August. The winner of the Sports Star of the Year Award, decided by the public through voting by SMS and online on the Sascoc website, was cricketer Hashim Amla. Other winners included:

- Cameron van der Burgh (Sportsman of the Year)
- Noko Matlou (Sportswoman of the Year)
- Former world No 1 golfer Ernie Els, 2010 FIFA World Cup™ organising committee CEO Danny Jordaan, Premier Soccer League chairperson Irvin Khoza, former South African Football Association president Molefi Oliphant and fifth-dan karateka Peter Thage received Steve Tshwete Lifetime Achievement awards
- The Blue Bulls was named Team of the Year and Bulls mentor, Frans Ludeke, scooped the Coach of the Year accolade.
- Swimming sensation Chad le Clos was recognised as the Newcomer of the Year.
- Wheelchair tennis players Lucas Sithole and Kgothatso Montjane were respectively named Sportsman and Sportswoman of the Year with a Disability.

2011 sports highlights

Archery

South Africa hosted the 2011 World Indoor Archery Championships, held in Pretoria in October. Team South Africa won six gold medals, five silver and three bronze, with four new world records set.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

SPORT & RECREATION

The gold medallist winners were Jeanine van Kradenburg, Jakkie Fleming, Jenny Wittstock, Riaan van Wyk, Danielle Wentzel and Kobus Brink. Van Kradenburg, Flemming and Wentzel set new three-day world indoor records in their respective categories, while Brink set a new one-day world indoor record.

Athletics

In January 2011, South Africa participated in the 2011 International Paralympic Committee Athletics World Championships in Christchurch, New Zealand. Team South Africa ended seventh on the medals table with 25 medals, made up of nine gold, seven silver and nine bronze. Oscar Pistorius walked away with four medals (three gold and one silver) while Teboho Mokgalagadi and Ilse Hayes both won two gold medals each.

In August 2011, Pistorius reached the semi-final of the International Association of Athletics Federations Athletics World Championships in Daegu, South Korea.

South Africa finished 17th on the medals table, with two silver and two bronze.

Pistorius received the Laureus Sportperson of the Year with a Disability Award in February 2012.

Biking

Greg Minnaar was placed second in the downhill at the *Union Cycliste Internationale Mountain Bike World Cup* in Pietermaritzburg in April 2011, just 0,241 seconds behind American Aaron Gwin.

Cricket

India toured South Africa in 2010/11, with the third of three tests played in January 2011 in Cape Town. The test was drawn, and the series squared one-all. The two teams then met in a once-off twenty20 (T20) match, followed by a five-match one-day international (ODI) series, which South Africa won 3-2.

The 10th International Cricket Council (ICC) Cricket World Cup took place in India, Sri Lanka and Bangladesh from February to April 2011. South Africa finished at the top of Group B and met New Zealand in the quarter-finals, where they unfortunately lost. India went on to become the 2011 ICC world champions.

Hashim Amla, Dale Steyn, AB de Villiers and Jacques Kallis were all included in the International Cricket Council's (ICC) Test Team of the Year, with De Villiers and Steyn also included in the One-Day International Team of the Year.



The following players were shortlisted for 2011 ICC awards: Amla for the People's Choice Award, the Garfield Sobers Trophy for Cricketer of the Year and ODI Player of the Year; Kallis for Test Player of the Year and Spirit of Cricket; and JP Duminy for Twenty20 International Performance of the Year.

In April 2011, cricketers Jacques Kallis and Dale Steyn were honoured in the 2011 *Wisden Cricketer's Almanack* by being named in its Test XI for the 2010 calendar year.

In October and November 2011, Australia visited the country to square off in a contest comprising two T20 games, two ODIs and two tests. The Australians won the first T20, but the Proteas won the second game to draw the T20 series. Australia won the first rain-logged ODI, while South Africa won the second. Australia bounced back to win the third and decisive game.

The contest between the two countries continued into a close-fought test series, with the locals winning the first nail-biting test and the visitors being victorious in the second. On the first day of the second test, Kallis became only the fourth batsman ever to score 12 000 test runs.

In December 2011 and January 2012, Sri Lanka toured South Africa, playing three tests and five ODIs. South Africa won the test series 2-1 and the ODI series 3-2.

Boxing

In October 2011, Moruti Mthalane successfully defended his International Boxing Federation flyweight title for a third time as he stopped home favourite Andrea Sarritzu in the seventh round in Italy.

Cycling

The South African para-cycling team returned from the 2011 International Cycling Union Para-Cycling Road World Cup Final, which took place in Canada in July, with six medals.

Flying

Team South Africa put in an impressive performance at the 20th Precision Flying World Championships, held at Brits in

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

SPORT & RECREATION

North West in October 2011. South Africa came second in the Team Landing Category, with squad member Hans Schwebel being named the runner-up for the landing trophy. This was the first time the country hosted the event.

Golf

Rory Sabbatini captured his sixth PGA Tour title in March 2011 when he won the Honda Classic on the PGA National Champion Course at Palm Beach Gardens in Florida.

In April 2011, Charl Schwartzel captured a two-shot victory in the US Masters at Augusta in the United States of America (USA).

In May 2011, Thomas Aiken won the Spanish Open. His win was the fifth by a South African on the European Tour in the 2011 season, following Ernie Els' win in the South African Open Championship, Louis Oosthuizen claiming the Africa Open, and Schwartzel triumphing in the Joburg Open and the Masters. Aiken's victory was the 99th by a South African on the European Tour.

In the same month, Els was inducted into the World Golf Hall of Fame. He joined the legendary Gary Player, who entered the hall in 1974.

Also in May, Schwartzel moved into the top 10, coming in at number seven, after eight top-10 finishes by the year's halfway mark.

Garth Mulroy scored his maiden PGA European Tour victory in the Alfred Dunhill Championship in November 2011, recording the 100th win by a South African on the tour.

In December 2011, Schwartzel came second in the Thailand Golf Championship.

Hockey

In February 2011, the Investec South Africa women's hockey team defeated China in Bloemfontein, and then concluded the Investec International Series with a 3-2 win over Belgium.

In June 2011, South African striker Pietie Coetzee broke the women's hockey world record of 220 test match goals with a stunning first-half hat-trick and four goals in total in a 5-5 draw between South Africa and the USA at the Champions Challenge tournament in Dublin. The team went on to claim fifth place after a 2-1 victory over the hosts, Ireland.

In July 2011, members of the International Olympic Committee (IOC) converged in Durban for their annual general meeting – the first time that the committee met on African soil.



The meeting took place at Durban's International Convention Centre and formed part of the 123rd IOC session, during which PyeongChang (South Korea) was selected ahead of Munich (Germany) and Annecy (France) as host city of the 2018 Winter Olympics.

The men's hockey team finished third at the International Hockey Federation Champions Challenge in Johannesburg in December 2011.

In the same month, the women's hockey team played in the Four Nations competition in Argentina. They finished in second place. India and Ireland also played in the championship.

Motor racing

Driver Giniel de Villiers finished second in the 2011 Dakar Rally Argentina – Chile in January 2011.

The International Superstars Series for V8 production cars was held at South Africa's Kyalami racetrack in Gauteng in November. Thomas Biagi won the series.

Netball

In July 2011, South Africa's netball team claimed first place in Africa and fifth place in the world rankings at the World Netball Championships in Singapore. Erin Burger was named Player of the Tournament.

Polocrosse

In July 2011, South Africa captured the Polocrosse World Cup title for the first time when they defeated neighbours Zimbabwe in the final at the Onley Grounds Equestrian Centre near Rugby in the United Kingdom. Polocrosse is a combination of polo and lacrosse and the format features men and women playing alternate chukkas.

Rugby

The International Rugby Board (IRB) awarded the hosting rights for the IRB Junior World Championship 2012 to the South African Rugby Union in April 2011. It took place in June 2012 and was won by South Africa, beating New Zealand in the final.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

SPORT & RECREATION

South Africa's 2010/11 HSBC Sevens World Series campaign proved successful, with the team beating Fiji in the US leg in Las Vegas in February 2011. In May 2011, South Africa beat Australia in the final of the London leg of the series. South Africa went on to win the tournament in the Edinburgh leg. This was the team's first successive tournament title victories since 2008, when they won the Dubai and George tournaments within the space of two weeks. The team finished second overall on the HSBC Sevens World Series standings with 140 points, 16 behind champions New Zealand.

In October 2011, Cecil Afrika was announced the IRB Sevens Player of the Year.

The 2011 Tri-Nations series was shortened from nine games to six to accommodate the Rugby World Cup, with each team playing the other two twice instead of three times. South Africa lost to Australia twice and once to the All Blacks, before victory over the All Blacks in August 2011. The series was ultimately won by Australia.

The seventh Rugby World Cup was held in September and October 2011 in New Zealand. The Springboks, the defending champions, kicked off their campaign with a win over Wales. They went on to convincingly beat Fiji and Namibia, a game in which Bryan Habana became the most prolific test try-scorer in South African rugby history with his 39th try in 72 matches. A victory over Samoa saw the Boks reach the quarter-finals unbeaten at the top of Pool D. Unfortunately, they exited the World Cup in the quarter-finals after a loss against Australia. New Zealand was ultimately crowned world champions after beating France in the final, refereed by South Africa's Craig Joubert.

Soccer

Bafana Bafana began their 2011 season with a victory over Kenya in a friendly international at the Royal Bafokeng Stadium in Rustenburg in February.

In March 2011, Bafana Bafana beat Egypt at Coca-Cola Park in Johannesburg to stay at the top of the African Cup of Nations (Afcon) qualifying Group G.

South Africa's national women's football team, Banyana Banyana, defeated Zambia in Lusaka in January 2011 in their opening qualifier for the 2012 London Olympic Games. They took a one-goal advantage into their second-leg Olympic

In February 2011, Sibusiso Vilane (40) became the first black African to summit Mount Everest and walk to the South Pole completely unaided.



He was also the first black man to climb the highest peaks on all seven continents, earning him a place in the prestigious Seven Summits Club, which has just six South Africans among its 198 members worldwide.

qualifier against Tunisia in April 2011 after beating the north Africans in Durban, advancing to the final group of four African countries in the hunt for two places at the London 2012 Olympics.

South Africa's under-23 football team went through to the last round of qualifying for the 2011 All-Africa Games in Maputo, Mozambique, despite a loss to Malawi in May 2011. They put on a superb performance in the second leg of their Olympic qualifier against Benin at Johannesburg's Rand Stadium in June 2011 to reach the last eight of the qualifiers.

Siphiwe Tshabalala captained Bafana Bafana to a 0-0 draw in their 2012 Afcon qualifying match against Egypt at the Military Academy Stadium in Egypt in June 2011.

In July 2011, the under-23 men's side qualified for the All-Africa Games despite a loss, while Banyana Banyana was beaten in the final of the Council of Southern Africa Football Associations Women's Championship. Both sides were in action against Zimbabwe at the Rufaro Stadium in Harare. Shakes Mashaba's charges were beaten on the day, but the goal difference from their previous encounter gave South Africa a victory on aggregate.

Banyana Banyana qualified for the All-Africa Games, which took place in Mozambique in September. Unfortunately, they fell to Zimbabwe.

In July 2011, South Africa's Kaizer Chiefs netted a late winner to edge Champions League quarter-finalists Tottenham Hotspur 1-0 in the opening match of the Vodacom Challenge at Peter Mokaba Stadium in Polokwane.

Bafana Bafana outplayed Burkina Faso at Coca-Cola Park in Johannesburg in August 2011. They lost to Niger and conceded their lead in Group G in September 2011. They then drew with Sierra Leone in Nelspruit. However, the team did not qualify for the 2012 Afcon finals.

In September 2011, Banyana Banyana secured their spot at the 2012 London Olympics with a 1-0 draw over Ethiopia.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

SPORT & RECREATION

The annual Nelson Mandela Challenge was held in Port Elizabeth in November 2011, where Bafana Bafana drew with Côte d'Ivoire to share the trophy.

In December 2011, the South African under-23 side drew with Gabon in Morocco in their second match of the Confederation of African Football Under-23s Championship. The eight-nation tournament also served as the qualifying tournament for the 2012 London Olympics.

Special Olympics

The South African team that participated in the 2011 Special Olympics World Summer Games in Greece brought home 71 medals and countless ribbons. They received 38 gold, 20 silver and 13 bronze medals respectively in swimming, track and field, basketball, boxing, soccer, golf and table tennis.

Surfing, surfski and canoeing

In June 2011, Hank McGregor won his third Dunlop Surfski World Cup title in Durban. The women's race was dominated by Eastern Cape Olympian Michéle Eray, who won the women's event and finished 25th overall in the competition. The Dunlop Surfski World Cup set a world record when 330 entries were received by close of normal entries on 10 June, making it the biggest international surfski event in the world.

In July 2011, South Africa finished seventh out of 27 nations at the 2011 Billabong International Surfing Association World Surfing Games in Panama. The eight-surfer team collected a copper medal for placing fourth in the Aloha Cup event.

Later the same month, South African big-wave star Grant "Twiggy" Baker won the first Oakley One Wave Wonder event powered by Zigzag.

At the end of July 2011, Jordy Smith captured the 2011 Billabong Pro Jeffreys Bay in a hard-fought final over Australia's Mick Fanning.

In October 2011, the South African Masters surfing team finished third in the team competition at the 2011 El Salvador International Surfing Association World Masters Surfing Championship. They also bagged five individual medals, one in each of the five contested categories.

At the end of October, McGregor won the 2011 International Canoe Federation Canoe Marathon World Championship K1 title in Singapore. The competition was a productive one for the

South African contingent, with the Masters Cup team claiming 11 medals in day one's races: five gold, four silver and two bronze.

Swimming

In June 2011, South Africa's squad claimed two gold, one silver and two bronze medals on the first day of the Canet, France, leg of the Mare Nostrum series.

Cameron van der Burgh showed his skills in the 50-m breaststroke when he won gold. The 14-year-old Michelle Weber bagged the 800-m freestyle title, finishing over five seconds ahead of the pack. Gerhard Zandberg set a new meeting record as he took gold in the men's 50-m backstroke.

Chad le Clos made a big impact on the Fina/Arena World Cup circuit in 2011, winning 23 gold medals, 10 silver and two bronze – a total of 34 medals from seven meetings. He was also named the Best Male Swimmer in the series. Van der Burgh won two bronze medals in the series.

South Africa also excelled at the Africa Junior Swimming Championship in Nigeria in December 2011. The team returned with 69 medals out of a possible 80. They won 35 gold medals and set 11 gala records.

Tennis

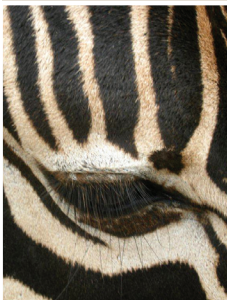
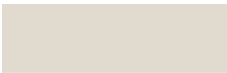
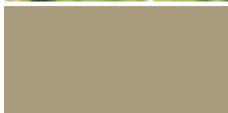
South Africa's number one women's player, Chani Scheepers, claimed her maiden Women's Tennis Association (WTA) Tour title in the Wanlima International Women's Open in Guanzhou, China, in September. Scheepers' victory ended an eight-year title drought for South Africa.

Days later, South African doubles specialist Natalie Grandin also won her maiden WTA title at the Hansol Korea Open in Seoul, South Korea.

South Africa became the first African country to host the Wheelchair Tennis World Team Cup when the 27th competition took place at the University of Pretoria in April 2011. South Africa's men's wheelchair tennis team won a bronze medal, while the Netherlands proved themselves to be number one in both the men's and women's game.



POCKET GUIDE TO SOUTH AFRICA



READING LIST

READING LIST

The land and its people

- De Haan, MJ. 2010. *Mission on the Margin: A Case Study on Reformed Mission Prospects in eNkumane, KwaZulu-Natal*. Dorpspruit: Cluster Publications.
- Essof, S and Moshenberg, D. 2011. *Searching for South Africa: the New Calculus of Dignity*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
- Fraser, S. 2010. *South Africa*. Cape Town: Random House Struik.
- Fraser, S. 2011. *Gauteng A – Z*. Cape Town: Random House Struik.
- Mbenga, B and Manson, A. 2010. *People of the Dew: A History of the Bafokeng of Phokeng-Rustenburg Region, South Africa From Early Times to 2000*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Medea, L. 2010. *Reunion Island: In Search of an Identity*. Pretoria: Unisa Press with CAEN.
- Von Kapff, U. 2011. *The Zulu – An A – Z of Culture and Traditions*. Cape Town: Random House Struik.
- Ward, C. 2009. *South Africa*. London: Wayland.

History

- Brenner, J, Burroughs, E and Nel, K. 2011. *Life of Bone: Art Meets Science*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Calland, R, Naidoo, L and Whaley, A. 2010. *The Vuvuzela Revolution*. Johannesburg: Jacana Media.
- Cherry, J. 2011. *Umkhonto we Sizwe*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Clarke, RJ and Partridge, TC. 2010. *Caves of the Ape-Men: South Africa's Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- De Jongh, M. 2011 (2012). *Roots and Routes: Karretjie People of the Great Karoo. The Marginalisation of a South African First People*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
- Hamilton, C, Mbenga, BK and Ross, R (eds). 2010. *The Cambridge History of South Africa*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Hughes, H. 2011. *First President: A Life of John Dube*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Limb, P. 2010. *The ANC's Early Years: Nation, Class and Place in South Africa before 1940*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
- Ruiters, G (ed). 2011. *The Fate of the Eastern Cape: History, Politics and Social Policy*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Shearer, J. 2011. *Against the World: South Africa and Human Rights at the United Nations 1945 – 1961*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

- Shillington, K. 2011. *Luka Jantjie: Resistance Hero of the South African Frontier*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- To Serve and Protect: The Inkathagate Scandal*. 2010. As told to Laurence Piper by Brian Morrow. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
- Wilson, L. 2011. *Steve Biko*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Wright, J and Mazel, A. 2011. *Umlando wezintaba zoKhahlamba – History of the uKhahlamba Mountains*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Wylie, D. 2011. *Shaka*. Johannesburg: Jacana.

Agriculture, forestry and fisheries

- Abstract of Agricultural Statistics*. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, Directorate: Agricultural Information Services, annually.
- Beinart, W and Wotshela, L. 2011. *Prickly Pear: A Social History of a Plant in the Eastern Cape*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Economic Review of South African Agriculture*. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, Annually.
- Investment, Farming and Agribusiness South Africa*. Johannesburg: Trade Edge, Annually.
- Threats to the Food Security and Food Sovereignty in the Eastern Cape: Impacts of the Massive Food Production Programme (MFPP), GMOs and Cash Crops in Four Villages in the Amathole District Municipality*. 2010. [SI]: Masifunde Education and Development Project Trust.

Arts and culture

- Blundell, G, Chippindale, C and Smith, B (eds). 2010. *Seeing and Knowing: Rock Art with and without Ethnography*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Jenkins, E. 2012. *Seedlings: English Children's Reading and Writers in South Africa*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
- Jorritsma, M. 2011. *Sonic Spaces of the Karoo: The Sacred Music of a South African Coloured Community*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Krouse, M and Anders, P (eds). 2010. *Positions: Contemporary Artists in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Lewis-Williams, JD. 2011. *Deciphering Ancient Minds: The Mystery of San Bushmen Rock Art*. [SI]: Thames and Hudson.
- Lewis-Williams, JD. 2011. *San Rock Art*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Mangu, X (ed). 2011. *Becoming Worthy Ancestors: Archive, Public Deliberation and Identity in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Neser, A. 2011. *Stranger at Home: The Praise Poet in Apartheid South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

READING LIST

- Parkington, J and Rusch, N. 2010. *San Rock Engravings – Marking the Karoo Landscape*. Cape Town: Random House Struik.
- Rust, R and Van der Poll, J. 2011. *Water Stone and Legend – Rock Art of the Klein Karoo*. Cape Town: Random House Struik.
- Thurman, C (ed). 2010. *Sport Versus Art: A South African Contest*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Van der Vlies, A. 2011. *South African Textual Cultures: White, Black, Read All Over*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Wessels, M. 2010. *Bushman Letters: Interpreting /Xam Narrative*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Communications

- Andersson, M. 2010. *Intertextuality, Violence and Memory in Yizo Yizo: Youth TV drama*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
- Chasi, C, Hicks, M and Tager, M (eds). 2011. *iTV: The State of Television in South Africa*. Cape Town: Pearson.
- Cole, CM. 2010. *Performing South Africa's Truth Commission: Stages of Transition*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Harber, A and Renn, M. 2010. *Troublemakers: The Best of South Africa's Investigative Journalism*. Johannesburg: Jacana Media.
- Krabill, R. 2010. *Starring Mandela and Cosby: Media and the End(s) of Apartheid*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Olorunnisola, A and Tomaselli, KG (eds). 2011. *Political Economy of Media Transformation in South Africa*. Cresskill, NJ: Hampton Press.
- Reid, J (ed). 2012. *Visual and Media Studies in South Africa*. Cape Town: Pearson.
- Wasserman, H. 2010. *Tabloid Journalism in South Africa*. Cape Town: UCT Press.

Economy

- Barkhuizen, E et al. 2010. *Human Resource Management: Global and Southern African Perspectives*. Cape Town: Pearson.
- Cargill, J. 2010. *Trick or Treat: Rethinking Black Economic Empowerment*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Carson, TM. 2011. *Tomorrow it Could Be You: Strikes and Boycotts in South Africa, 1978 – 1982*. Oxford: Peter Lang.
- De Liefde, WHJ. 2011. *ULC the Leadership Navigator: Governance without Fear*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Draper, P and Mbirimi, I (eds). 2010. *Climate Change and Trade: Challenges for Southern Africa*. Johannesburg: Jacana.

- Forrest, K. 2011. *Metal That Will Not Bend: The National Union of Metalworkers of South Africa, 1980 – 1995*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Harvey, N (ed). 2011. *Turnaround Management and Corporate Renewal: A South African Perspective*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Mosoetsa, S. 2011. *Eating from One Pot: The Dynamics of Survival in Poor South African Households*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Roux, A. 2010. *Everyone's Guide to the South African Economy*. 10th edition. Cape Town: Random House Struik.
- The South African Business Forecast Report: Includes 10-year Forecasts to end-2018*. London: Business Monitor.

Education

- Booyse, JJ et al. 2011. *A History of Schooling in South Africa: Method and Context*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
- Christie, P. 2010. *Opening the Doors of Learning: Changing Schools in South Africa*. Cape Town: Pearson.
- Cooper, D. 2011. *The University in Development: Case Studies of Use-Oriented Research*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Curriculum Studies in South Africa: Intellectual Histories and Present Circumstances*. 2010. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Haupt, A and Malange, NJ. 2010. *Corporate Law for Commerce Students*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
- Lemmer, E and Van Wyk, N (eds). 2010. *Themes in South African Education: For the Comparative Educationist*. Cape Town: Pearson.
- Marishane, RN and Botha, RJ. 2011. *School Leadership in a Changing Context*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
- Oosthuizen, IJ, Rossouw, JP and De Wet, A. 2011. *Introduction to Education Law*. Second edition. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
- Rossouw, JP. 2010. *Labour Relations Education: A South African Perspective*. 2010. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
- Student Retention and Graduate Destination: Higher Education and Labour Market Access and Success*. 2010. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- We Can't Afford Not To: Costing the Provision of Functional School Libraries in South Africa*. 2011. Khayalitsha: Equal Education.

Energy

- Bond, P, Dada, R and Erion, G (eds). 2009. *Climate Change, Carbon Trading and Civil Society: Negative Returns on South African Investments*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

READING LIST

Scoping Study on Water Use of Crops/Trees for Biofuels in South Africa: Report to the Water Research Commission. Gezina: WRC.

Winkler, H. 2009. *Cleaner Energy, Cooler Climate: Developing Sustainable Energy Solutions for South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Environmental affairs

Astronomical Society of Southern Africa. 2011. *2012 Sky Guide Africa South: Astronomical Handbook for Southern Africa.* Cape Town: Random House Struik.

Bromilow, C. 2010. *Problem Plants and Alien Weeds of South Africa.* Pretoria: Briza.

Compion, S. 2010. *Insider's Guide: Top Wildlife Photography Spots in South Africa.* Johannesburg: Jacana.

Emmett, M. 2010. *Game Ranger in Your Backpack: All-in-one Interpretative Guide to the Lowveld.* Pretoria: Briza.

The Geographical Variation of Southern African Birds. 2011. John Voelcker Bird Book Fund.

Newman, K. 2011. *Newman's Birds by Colour.* Cape Town: Random House Struik.

Picker, M and Griffiths, C. 2011. *Alien and Invasive Animals: A South African Perspective.* Cape Town: Random House Struik.

Schutze, H. 2010. *Field Guide to the Mammals of the Kruger National Park.* Cape Town: Random House Struik.

Stoffberg, H, Hinds, C and Mulder, L (eds). 2012. *South African Landscape Architecture: A Compendium, and South African Landscape Architecture: A Reader.* Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Towards a Low Carbon City: Focus on Durban. 2011. Pretoria: Academy of Science of South Africa.

Whitehead, M. 2010. *Passes and Poorts: Getaway's Top 30 Scenic Mountain Routes in the Western Cape.* Johannesburg: Jacana.

Finance

Fourie, M, Opperman, L, Scott and Kumar, K. 2011. *Municipal Finance and Accounting.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Hugo, WMJ and Badenhorst-Weiss, JA. 2011. *Purchasing and Supply Management.* Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors (South Africa). 2011. *Manual of information 2011 Guidelines for Registered Auditors.* Johannesburg.

Mahadea, D and Van Zyl, J (eds). 2012. *Entrepreneurship and Small Business Management.* Cape Town: Pearson.

Van Zyl, C *et al* (eds). 2009. *Understanding South African Financial Markets*. Third edition. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Government system

Asmal, K and Hadland, A. 2011. *Kader Asmal: Political Memoirs*. Johannesburg: Jacana Media.

Baker, D-P and Jordaan, E. 2010. *South Africa and Contemporary Counter-Insurgency: Roots, Practices, Prospects*. Cape Town: UCT Press.

Beinart, W and Dawson, MC (eds). 2010. *Popular Politics and Resistance Movements in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Booyesen, S. 2011. *The African National Congress and the Regeneration of Political Power: People, Party, Policy*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Butler, A (ed). 2010. *Paying for Politics: Party Funding and Political Change in South Africa and the Global South*. Johannesburg: Jacana Media.

Gerhart, GM (ed). 2011. *From Protest to Challenge: A Documentary History of African Politics in South Africa, 1882 – 1990*. Volumes 1 – 6. Johannesburg: Jacana.

Government and Politics in South Africa. 2011. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Jeffery, A. 2010. *Chasing the Rainbow: South Africa's Move From Mandela to Zuma*. Johannesburg: South African Institute for Race Relations.

Liebenberg, S. 2010. *Socio-Economic Rights: Adjudication under a Transformative Constitution*. Claremont: Juta.

Mathebe, L. 2011. *Mandela and Mbeki: The Hero and the Outsider*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Misra-Dexter, N and February, J (eds). 2010. *Testing Democracy: Which Way is South Africa Going?* Cape Town: Idasa.

Plaatjies, D. (ed). 2011. *Future Inheritance: Building Capacity within the South African State*. Johannesburg: Jacana.

The Road to Democracy in South Africa. 2010. 4 Volumes. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Venter, A and Landsberg, C. 2011. *Government and Politics in South Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Health

Barnards, M. 2011. *Defining Moments*. Cape Town: Random House Struik.

Bourne, D. 2010. *Collective Works of David Bourne, Demographer and Health Advocate*. Cape Town: School of Public Health and Family Medicine.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

READING LIST

- Coulson, N *et al.* 2010. *Developing Capacity for Health*. Johannesburg: Heinemann.
- Dickinson, D. 2010. *Changing the Course of AIDS: Peer Education in South Africa and its Lessons for the Global Crisis*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Geffen, N. 2010. *Debunking Delusions: The Inside Story of the Treatment Action Campaign*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Hutton, B (ed). 2011. *Recovery RSA*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Larsen J. 2010. *KwaBaka: A Search for Excellence in Caring: The Story of a Mission Hospital Community in Zululand, 1930 – 2006*. Pietermaritzburg Cluster.
- Okorafor, OA. 2010. *Primary Healthcare Spending: Striving for Equity under Fiscal Federalism*. Cape Town: UCT Press.
- Palitza, K, Ridgard, N, Struthers, H and Harber, A (eds). 2010. *What is Left Unsaid: Reporting the South African HIV Epidemic, Selected Journalism, Research and Analysis, 2003 – 2010*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- The Principles and Practice of Nursing and Health Care 2010*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
- Tomaselli, K and Chasi, C (eds). 2011. *Development and Public Health Communication*. Cape Town: Pearson.
- Uys, L and Middleton, L (eds). 2010. *Mental Health Nursing: A South African Perspective*. Cape Town: Juta.
- Van Dyk, A. 2011. *HIV and AIDS: Education, Care and Counseling*. Fifth edition. Cape Town: Pearson.

Human settlements

- Bank, LJ. 2011. *Home Spaces, Street Styles: Contesting Power and Identity in a South African City*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Bieber, J. 2010. *Soweto*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Murray, MJ. 2011. *City of Extremes: The Spatial Politics of Johannesburg*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Pieterse, E (ed). 2010. *Counter Currents: Experiments in Sustainability in the Cape Town Region*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Schenck, R, Louw, H and Nel, H. 2010. *Introduction to Participatory Community Practice*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

International relations and cooperation

- Abegunrin, O. 2009. *Africa in Global Politics in the Twenty-First Century: A Pan-African Perspective*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Gruzd, S (ed). 2010. *Grappling with Governance: Perspectives on the African Peer Review Mechanism*. Johannesburg: Jacana.

Hofmeyr, I and Williams, M (eds). *South Africa and India: Shaping the Global South*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Justice and correctional services

Altbeker, A. 2010. *Fruit of a Poisoned Tree: A True Story of Murder and the Miscarriage of Justice*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.

Bhauna, H. 2010. *The Survivor's Guide for Candidate Attorneys*. Claremont: Juta.

Bennett, T. 2011. *Traditional African Religions in South African Law*. Cape Town: UCT Press.

Brand, R. 2011. *Media Law in South Africa*. Alphen aan den Rijn: Kluwer Law International.

Gilmore, SA. 2010. *PULP Guide: Finding Legal Information in South Africa 2010*. Pretoria: Pretoria University Legal Press.

Gready, P. 2011. *The Era of Transitional Justice: The Aftermath of the Truth and Reconciliation Commission of South Africa and Beyond*. Abington: Routledge.

Hammond, S, Mabena, V and Strydom, E. 2011. *Understanding the Skills Development Act*. Cape Town: Juta Law.

Handmaker, J and Berkhout R. 2010. *Mobilising Social Justice in South Africa: Perspectives from Researchers and Practitioners*. Pretoria: Pretoria University Law Press.

Lollini, A. 2011. *Constitutionalism and Transitional Justice in South Africa*. New York: Berghahn Books.

Meintjies-Van der Walt, L *et al.* 2011. *Introduction to South African Law: Fresh Perspectives*. Cape Town: Heinemann/Pearson Education South Africa.

Mukuka, GS. 2010. *"Reap What You Have Not Sown": Indigenous Knowledge Systems and Intellectual Property Laws in South Africa*. Pretoria: Pretoria University Law Press.

Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act 4 of 2000. 2010. Claremont: Juta.

Van der Linde, M and Feris, L. 2010. *Compendium of South African Environmental Legislation*. Second edition. Pretoria: Pretoria University Legal Press.

Van Marle, K. 2010. *PULP Fictions No 6, August 2010: On "Shoot the Boer", Hate Speech and the Banning of Struggle Songs*. Pretoria: Pretoria University Law Press.

Mineral resources

Machens, EW. 2009. *Platinum, Gold and Diamonds: The Adventure of Hans Merensky's Discoveries*. Pretoria: Protea Book House.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

READING LIST

- Royal Bafokeng Administration. Research and Planning Department. 2010. *Mining the Future: The Bafokeng Story*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Winkler, H. 2009. *Cleaner Energy, Cooler Climate: Developing Sustainable Energy Solutions for South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Zhao, B et al. 2010. *Evaluation and Validation of Geochemical Prediction Techniques for Underground Coal Mines in the Witbank/Vryheid Regions: Report to the Water Research Commission*. Gezina WRC.

Police, defence and intelligence

- Blake, C. 2010. *From Soldier to Civvy*. Cape Town: Zebra Press.
- Faull, A. 2010. *Behind the Badge: The Untold Stories of South Africa's Police Service Members*. Cape Town: Zebra Press.
- Hendricks, C and Musavengana, T (eds). 2010. *The Security Sector in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.
- Hornberger, J. 2011. *Policing and Human Rights: The Meaning of Violence and Justice in the Everyday Policing of Johannesburg*. Abington: Routledge.
- Kastrils, R. 2010. *The Unlikely Secret Agent*. Johannesburg: Jacana Media.
- Landau, LB (ed). 2011. *Exorcising the Demons Within: Xenophobia, Violence and Statecraft in Contemporary South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Matthysen, P, Kalkwarf, M and Huxtable, M. 2010. *Recce: A Collector's Guide to the History of the South African Special Forces*. Johannesburg: 30° South.
- Mills, G. 2011. *An Option of Difficulties? A 21st Century South African Defence Review*. Johannesburg: Brenthurst Foundation.
- Nicol, M. 2010. *Killer Country*. Cape Town: Umuzi.
- Retief, H. 2011. *Byleveld: Dossier of a Serial Sleuth*. Cape Town: Umuzi.
- Tait, S and Van der Spuy, E. 2010. *Cooperation and Accountability in the Cross-Border Policing of Southern Africa*. Cape Town: African Policing Civilian Oversight Forum.
- Volker, WV. 2010. *Signal Units of the South African Corps of Signals and Related Signal Services*. Pretoria: Veritas Books.

Rural development and land reform

- Alden, C. 2009. *Land, Liberation and Compromise in Southern Africa*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Bloom, J. 2009. *Rising Tide: How Freedom of Responsibility Uplifts Everyone*. South Africa: South African Institute of Race Relations.

- Gibson, J.L. 2009. *Overcoming Historical Injustices: Land Reconciliation in South Africa*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Hall, R (ed). 2009. *Another Countryside? Policy Options for Land and Agrarian Reform in South Africa*. Bellville: PLAAS, School of Government, University of the Western Cape.
- Land, Memory, Reconstruction, and Justice: Perspectives on Land Claims in South Africa*. 2010. Athens, Ohio: Ohio University Press.
- Nelson, F (ed). 2010. *Community Rights, Conservation and Contested Land: The Politics of Natural Resource Governance in Africa*. London: Earthscan.
- Yanou, MA. 2009. *Dispossession and Access to Land in South Africa: An African Perspective*. Mankon, Bamenda: Langaa Research and Publishing CIG.

Science and technology

- Huigen, S. 2009. *Knowledge and Colonialism: Eighteenth-Century Travellers in South Africa*. Leiden: Brill.
- James, W. 2010. *Nature's Gifts: Why We Are the Way We Are*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Southern African Steel Construction Handbook*. 2010. Johannesburg: South African Institution of Steel Construction.

Social development

- Daniel, J, Naidoo, P, Pillay, D and Southall, R (eds). 2010. *New South Africa Review 1: 2010: Development or Decline?* Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Daniel, J, Naidoo, P, Pillay, D and Southall, R (eds). 2011. *New South Africa Review 2: New Paths, Old Compromises*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Kaminer, D and Eagle, G. 2010. *Traumatic Stress in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Mager, AK. 2010. *Beer, Sociability and Masculinity in South Africa*. Cape Town: UCT Press.
- Piombo, J. 2009. *Institutions, Ethnicity and Political Mobilization in South Africa*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
- The Politics of Service Delivery*. 2009. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Re-imagining the Social in South Africa: Critique, Theory and Post-Apartheid Society*. 2009. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Scheub, H. 2010. *The Uncoiling Python: South African Storytellers and Resistance*. Athens: Ohio University Press.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

READING LIST

- Reddy, V, Sandfort, T and Rispel, L (eds). 2009. *From Social Silence to Social Science: Same-Sex Sexuality, HIV and AIDS and Gender in South Africa: Conference Proceedings*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Steyn, M and Van Zyl, M (eds). 2009. *The Prize and the Price: Shaping Sexualities in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Swart, I et al. 2010. *Religion and Social Development in Post Apartheid South Africa: Perspectives for Critical Engagement*. Stellenbosch: SUN Press.
- Swartz, S. 2010. *iKazi: The Moral Ecology of South Africa's Township Youth*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Sport and recreation

- Besong, MB. 2010. *South Africa: [Bafana, Bafana]*. 2010. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Desai, A (ed). 2010. *The Race to Transform: Sport in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Fraser, C. 2010. *Soccer Chic: Soccer Life the South African Way*. Cape Town: Quivertree Publications.
- Goode, R. 2010. *Football Muti*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Koonyaditse, OA. 2010. *The Politics of South African Football*. Grant Park: African Perspectives.
- Latakgomo, J. 2010. *Mzansi Magic: Struggle, Betrayal and Glory: the Story of South African Soccer*. Cape Town: Tafelberg.
- Maralack, D. 2010. *Transforming Sport and Identity in the Post-Apartheid South African Nation State*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard Bookstore Press.
- Marnewick, M. 2010. *Quest for Glory: Successes in South African Sport*. Cape Town: Zebra Press.
- Matfield, V. 2011. *Victor: My Journey*. Cape Town: Random House Struik.
- The Race to Transform: Sport in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. 2010. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Roberts, C. 2011. *No Normal Sport in an Abnormal Society: Struggle for Non-Racial Sport in South Africa: From Apartheid to Sports Unity*. Cape Town: Havana Media.
- Sport and Recreation South Africa. 2011. *Strategic Plan, 2011 – 2015*. Pretoria.
- Sport Versus Art: A South African Contest*. 2010. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.

Tourism

- Brodie, N. 2010. *Inside Joburg: 101 Things to See and Do*. Craighall Park: Sharp Sharp Media.

- Chabra, D. 2010. *Sustainable Marketing of Cultural and Heritage Tourism*. New York: Routledge.
- Discover Cape Agulhas: The Southern Tip of Africa, Where the Atlantic and Indian Oceans Meet*. 2010. South Africa: Wiz Marketing, for Cape Agulhas Tourism.
- George, R. 2011. *Marketing Tourism in South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa.
- Greenberg, L (ed). 2010. *Home Away: 24 Hours, 24 Cities, 24 Writers*. Cape Town: Zebra Press.
- Greenwood Guide to South Africa: Hand-picked Accommodation*. Fourth edition. London: Greenwood Guides.
- Hiscock, D. 2010. *Cape Town's Man-Made Wonder: Table Mountain Cableway, the First 80 Years*. Cape Town: Table Mountain Aerial Cableway Co.

Transport

- Louw, B. 2008. *The Gibson Brothers of the Red Star Line*. Welgemoed: JBZ Louw.
- Rorke, WB. 2007. *Trek Airways: A South African Adventure*. London: Athena Press.
- Ross, G. 2007. *The Romance of Cape Mountain Passes*. Cape Town: New Africa Books.
- South Africa. Department of Transport. [2000]. [e-resource]. *Moving South Africa: A Transport Strategy for 2010: Report and Strategy Recommendations*.

Water affairs

- Berg Water Project: Communication Practices for Governance and Sustainability Improvement*. 2010. Washington: World Bank.
- Haarhoff, J and Cassa, AM. 2009. *Introduction to Flood Hydrology*. Cape Town: Juta.
- Ilemobade, AA. 2009. *Assessment of the Feasibility of Using a Dual Water Reticulation System in South Africa*. Gezina WRC.
- Movik, S. 2012. *Fluid Rights: Water Allocation Reform in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Productive Use of Domestic Piped Water for Sustaining Livelihoods in Poor Households*. Gezina WRC.
- Review of Regulatory Aspects of the Water Services Sector*. 2009. Gezina WRC.
- Roux, DJ. 2009. *Enabling Effective Learning in Catchment Management Agencies: A Philosophy and Strategy*. Gezina WRC.
- Rust, U. 2009. *The Impact of Gender in the Rural Water Services Environment of South Africa*. Gezina WRC.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2011/12

READING LIST

- A Scoping Exercise to Investigate the Potential Need for, and Nature of, Water Trading in South Africa.* 2009. Gezina WRC.
- Swartz, CD. 2009. *A Planning Framework to Position Rural Water Treatment in South African for the Future.* Gezina WRC.
- Thompson, P. 2009. *The Development of a Generic Water Safety Plan for Small Community Water Supply.* Gezina WRC.
- Upgrading Existing South African Filtration Plants to High Rate Filters.* 2009. Gezina WRC.